



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

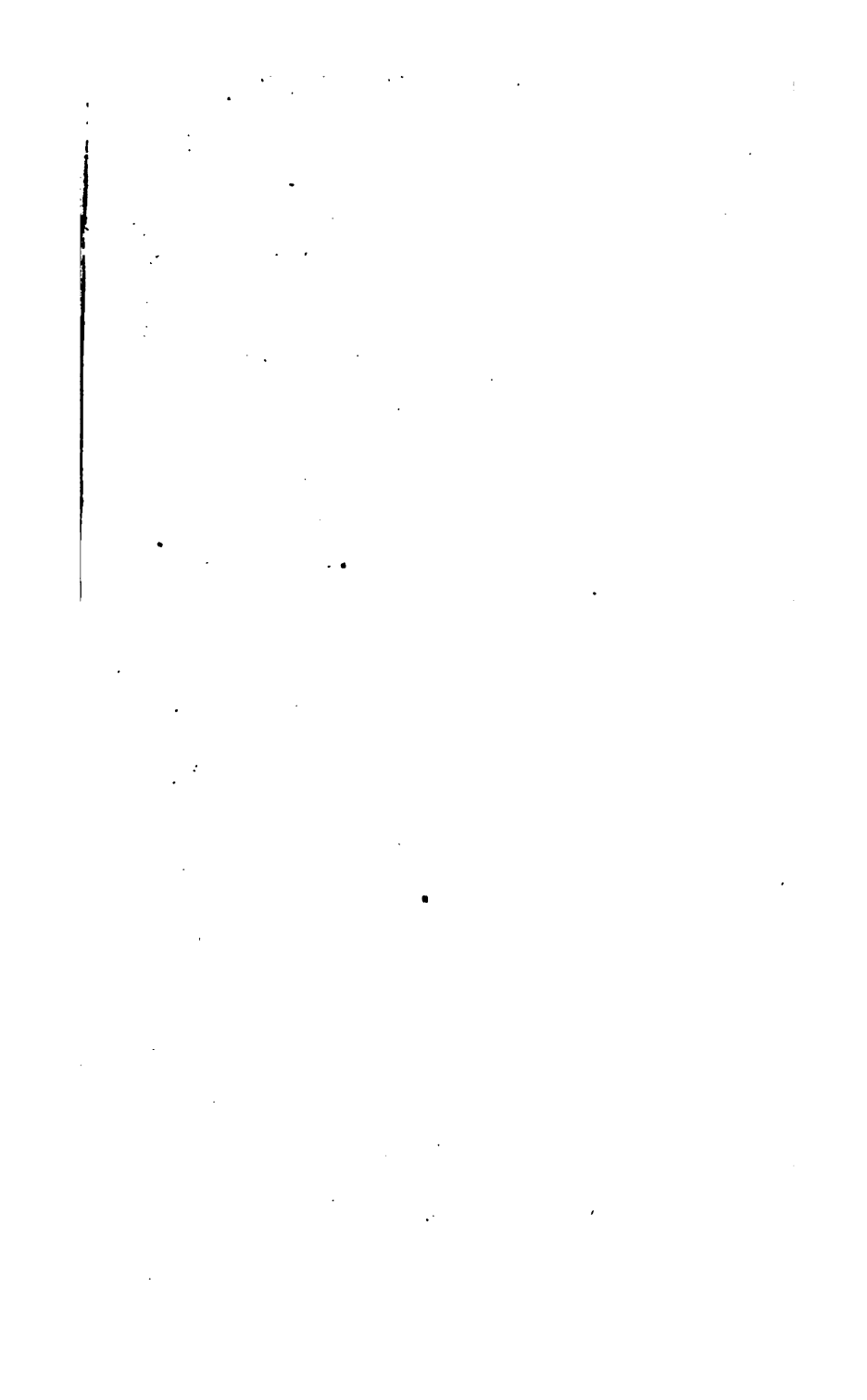
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





36.111





THE
ELEMENTS
OF
LATIN GRAMMAR,
FOR THE
USE OF SCHOOLS.

BY RICHARD HILEY;

Author of an English Grammar, &c. &c.

LONDON:
SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO. STATIONERS'-HALL-COURT;
JOHN HEATON, LEEDS.

1836.

///

**THE VENERABLE ARCHDEACON BUTLER'S OPINION
OF THIS GRAMMAR.**

A copy having been sent to the Venerable Archdeacon Butler, D.D. he has been pleased to honour the work with the following flattering opinion :—

“ I think your book, wherever I have examined it, done with *care* and *ability* ; it is short, clear, and well selected, and likely to be *very* useful.”



LEEDS:

Printed by John Heaton, 7, Briggate.

1836.

TO THE

VENERABLE ARCHDEACON BUTLER, D.D.

HEAD MASTER OF THE ROYAL FREE-GRAMMAR SCHOOL,

SHREWSBURY,

AND AUTHOR OF "ANCIENT AND MODERN GEOGRAPHY," &c. &c.

THIS MANUAL

IS, BY HIS PERMISSION, DEDICATED,

AS A

SMALL TESTIMONIAL OF THE HIGH ESTIMATION IN WHICH

HIS ERUDITION AS A SCHOLAR,

AND HIS TALENTS AS A PRECEPTOR, ARE HELD,

NOT ONLY BY THE PUBLIC,

BUT BY HIS

OBLIGED SERVANT,

THE AUTHOR.

PREFACE.

THE object which the Author has had in view in publishing the present manual is, to furnish the classical student, at a trifling expense, with a good First and Second Latin Grammar.

Instead of considering Grammar, as is too commonly the case, as a mere *necessary evil*,—a something to be endured for an ulterior advantage, he has, on the contrary, regarded it as a *positive good*,—the basis of all sound scholarship. In this light it is held by the Germans, and perhaps to this circumstance alone is to be attributed their superiority over us in Classical Literature.

True it is, that in several of the most respectable schools and academies, the introductory compendium is succeeded by the perusal of some larger work on the subject; but as there seldom exists any connexion between the two, the different facts are not easily retained, and consequently time is wasted, and little advantage derived. But with respect to the vast majority of schools, no other work than the common Grammar is adopted or even known. In such instances, the pupil, in preparing his lessons, has to encounter so many idioms and peculiarities of construction unexplained in his Grammar, that he is rarely enabled, after years of toil, to translate with even tolerable certainty, much less with facility. By an attentive application, however, of the information contained in the present treatise, he will be materially assisted both in translation and composition, as most of the peculiarities of construction occurring in the Authors usually read in schools are here explained under appropriate heads.

The greatest attention has been paid throughout both to the Definitions and to the Classification of the different rules. In the former, brevity has been studiously combined with perspicuity, and in the latter, an arrangement has been adopted which appeared best conducive to facilitate the retention and ready application of the whole.

In closing these remarks, the Author most cheerfully acknowledges great obligations to the works of Zumpt, Scheller, Crombie, Grant, Valpy, Ruddiman, and Adams.

Leeds, February 12, 1836.

An efficient series of Exercises, expressly adapted to this Grammar, is in course of preparation.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

LATIN GRAMMAR is a methodical collection of those rules on the spelling, the properties, construction, and pronunciation of the words in the Latin language, which were observed by the best Latin authors.

A knowledge of Latin Grammar enables us to read the Classics, that is, the best authors in the Latin language; and to write after their model.

It is divided into four Parts; namely, Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody.

I.—ORTHOGRAPHY.

Orthography teaches the forms and sounds of letters, and the just method of spelling words.

Letters are characters, representing the sounds of the human voice.

The letters of the Latin language, called the Latin Alphabet, are *twenty-five* in number; namely, A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

In Latin there is no *W*.

Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.

A *vowel* makes a full sound of itself; as, *a, e, o*.

A *consonant* makes only an imperfect sound of itself; as *b, c, d*, which require the aid of vowels to express them fully.

The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The consonants are *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z*.

The consonants are divided into *mutes* and *semivowels*. The *mutes* are those letters which entirely, and at once, obstruct the sound of the vowel, and prevent its continuation; they are *b, c, d, g, h, p, q, t*.

The *semivowels*, or half-vowels, are those letters which do not entirely obstruct the voice, but whose sounds may be continued at pleasure, and thus they partake of the nature of vowels. The semivowels are *f, l, m, n, r, s, v*.

Four of the semivowels, namely, *l, m, n, r*, are called *liquids*, from the ease with which they are pronounced after a mute.

J, x, z, are called double letters. *J* stands for *dg*; *X* stands for *cs* or *gs*; and *Z* for *ds* or *ts*.

C before *e, i*, and *y*, is pronounced like *s*; before *a, o*, and *u*, and before consonants, like *k*. *Ch* is pronounced like *k*.

C was anciently pronounced *k* before all vowels.

G before *e, i*, and *y*, is pronounced like *j*; before *a, o*, and *u*, and before consonants, it is hard, as in the word *gone*.

In some Hebrew words *g* is pronounced hard before *e* and *i*, as in *Gethsemane*, *Gideon*; so also in Greek words before *y*; as *Gyges*, *gymnasium*, *gypsum*, and in some few Latin words; as *gibber*, *gibbus*, &c.

A *diphthong* is the union of two vowels in one sound. There are eight diphthongs; *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe, oi, ui*.

The diphthongs *ae* and *oe* are generally pronounced as the vowel *e*, and are frequently joined and written thus: *Æ æ, Œ œ*.

A *syllable* is one distinct sound, and is either simple, that is, formed by one letter, as *I*; or compounded, that is, formed by two or more letters pronounced at once; as *mine*, *just*.

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g, q, or s*, as in *lingua, qui, suades*, when the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words are articulate sounds, used by common consent as signs of our ideas. A word of *one* syllable is termed a *monosyllable*; a word of *two* syllables, a *dissyllable*; a word of *three* syllables, a *trisyllable*; and a word of *four* or *more* syllables, a *polysyllable*.

Spelling is the method by which we express a word by its proper letters, and rightly divide it into syllables.

RULES FOR THE DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

1. A single consonant between two vowels must be joined to the latter, as *ma-ter*; except the letter *x*, which must be joined to the former vowel, as *ex-ul*.

2. Two consonants between two vowels must be separated; as *il-le, an-nus*. But those consonants which may together begin a word, may be joined to the latter vowel; as *tr* in *pa-tris, br* in *li-bris*.

3. Compounded words must be divided so as to keep the elementary parts distinct; as *inter-eram*, and not *inte-reram*, because the word is compounded of *inter* and *eram*. When *d* is inserted to prevent a hiatus, it goes with the former vowel, as *red-eo*, *prod-eo*.

The measure of time in pronouncing a syllable is termed its *quantity*; if long, it is marked thus ¯, as in *amāre*; or sometimes with a circumflex accent thus ^, as in *amāris*; if it is short, it is marked thus ˇ, as in *omnibus*.

A syllable having this mark / over it, shews that it is accented, as *mī* in *amicus*.

II.—ETYMOLOGY.

Etymology treats—first, of the *classification* of words into different sorts, called parts of speech; secondly, of their *properties*, that is, the various changes and inflections to which they are subject, in order to express gender, number, mood, tense, and person; and thirdly, of their *derivation* from their primitives.

There are in Latin eight sorts of words, or parts of speech; namely,

The Substantive or Noun, the Adjective, the Pronoun, the Verb, declined;

The Adverb, the Preposition, the Conjunction, and the Interjection, undeclined.

A word is said to be *declined* when it undergoes any change, particularly in the *end*, or, as it is usually called, the *termination*.

OF SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

A *Substantive* or *Noun* is the name of any person, place, or thing; as *puer*, a boy, *schola*, a school, *liber*, a book, *spes*, hope.

Substantives are either *common* or *proper*.

Common nouns, sometimes called appellatives, are the names given to a *whole class*, and are *common* to every individual of that class; as *homo*, a man; *arbor*, a tree.

Proper nouns are the names given to *individuals*, to distinguish them from other individuals of the same class; as *Georgius*, George; *Britannia*, Britain.

A *Redundant* noun is one that has more than one termination; as *baculus* and *baculum*, a staff.

A *Patronymic* noun is derived from a proper substantive, signifying one's extraction; as *Priāmidēs*, the son of Priāmus.

A *Patrial* or *Gentile* noun is derived from a proper substantive signifying one's country; as *Tros*, a Trojan.

A *Diminutive* noun is derived from another signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification; as *libellus*, a little book, from *liber*.

Diminutives generally end in *lus*, *la*, *lum*.

The properties belonging to substantives are gender, number, person, and case.

Gender is the distinction of sex. There are three genders, the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter.

Particular Rules on this subject will be given hereafter.

Number is the consideration of objects, either as *one*, or *more* than one.

There are two numbers, the singular and the plural. The singular expresses *one* object; as *pomum*, an apple; the plural expresses *more* objects than one; as *poma*, apples.

Nouns have *two* persons, the *second* and *third*. Nouns are of the second person when spoken *to*; as "*Boys*, attend to your lessons;" and of the third when spoken *of*; as "That *girl* is diligent."

Case is the form or state of a noun or pronoun, to express the *relation* which it bears to another word.

Case from *Casus* a falling, so called because cases were supposed to fall or decline from the nominative or *casus rectus*, the upright case; all the other cases were called *casus obliqui*, or the oblique cases.

There are six cases; the Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, the Accusative, the Vocative, and the Ablative.

1. The *Nominative* case is that form of the noun, which simply expresses the *name* of the person or thing, and is placed before a verb.

2. The *Genitive* is that form which expresses *origin*, *cause*, or *possession*, and generally has the sign *of*.

3. The *Dative* is that form which expresses *reception*, *acquisition*, or *loss*, and has the sign *to* or *for*.

4. The *Accusative* is that form which expresses the *object* of an action, and follows the verb or preposition denoting the action.

5. The *Vocative* is the form used in *addressing* persons or things, and seldom differs from the *Nominative*.

6. The *Ablative* is the form that denotes *agency, instrumentality, manner*, and various other modes of *circumstance*, and is always governed by some preposition expressed or understood. When the preposition is not expressed, its most frequent signs are, *by, from, in, than, with*.

Nominative comes from *nomino* to name; *Genitive* from *gigno* to produce; *Dative* from *do, datum*, to give; *Accusative* from *accuso* to accuse; *Vocative* from *voco* to call; *Ablative* from *aufero, ablatum*, to take away.

DECLENSIONS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

Declension is the change of a noun in its cases and numbers.

There are five declensions, distinguished by the ending of the *Genitive case*.

The first declension makes the *Genitive* in *æ*, the second in *i*, the third in *is*, the fourth in *us*, the fifth in *ei*.

FIRST DECLENSION.

The first Declension makes the *genitive singular* in *æ*.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Mens-a, <i>a table.</i>	N. Mens-æ, <i>tables.</i>
G. Mens-æ, <i>of a table.</i>	G. Mens-ārum, <i>of tables.</i>
D. Mens-æ, <i>to or for a table.</i>	D. Mens-is, <i>to or for tables.</i>
Ac. Mens-am, <i>a table.</i>	Ac. Mens-as, <i>tables.</i>
V. Mens-a, <i>O table!</i>	V. Mens-æ, <i>O tables!</i>
Ab. Mens-â, <i>by, from, in, with</i> <i>a table.</i>	Ab. Mens-is, <i>by, from, in, with</i> <i>tables.</i>

NOTE 1.—That part of a word which undergoes no variation, is called the *radix* or *root* of a word; thus *Mens* is the root of *mensa*.

2. The poets frequently make the *genitive singular* in *ai* for *æ*, as *aulai*, *aurai* for *aulæ*, *auræ*; and sometimes in *as*, as *terras* for *terræ*. The noun *familia* generally makes *as* in the *genitive case*, when joined to *pater*, *mater*, *filius*, *filia*; thus in the singular *pater-familias*, the father of the family, *patrio-familias*, of the father of the family, &c. plural, *patres-familias*, fathers of the family, &c. The regular forms *familia* in the *genitive singular*, and *familiarum* in the *genitive plural* are, however, not uncommon.

3. The *genitive plural* in the first, as well as in the second and third declensions, is frequently contracted; as *terrigenum* for *terrigenarum*, *Deum* for *deorum*, *serpentium* for *serpentum*.

4. *Anima*, the soul, the life, *asina*, a she-ass, *dea*, a goddess, *domina*, a lady, *equa*, a mare, *famula*, a maid-servant, *filia*, a daughter, *liberta*, a freed-woman, *mula*, a she-mule, *nata*, a daughter, *serva*, a female-slave, *socia*, a she-companion, frequently make the dative and ablative plural in *abus*, to distinguish them from *animis*, *asinis*, *dei*, &c. the masculines in *us* of the second declension. When the distinction is clear from the context, or from having the adjectives *duabus*, *ambabus* annexed, the termination *is* is more common, as *ambabus filiis*.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns in the second declension end in *er*, *us*, and *um*, and make the genitive singular in *i*.

Nouns in *er* generally reject, sometimes retain the *e* before *r*.

Singular.

- N. Magist-*er*, a master.
G. Magist-*ri*, of a master.
D. Magist-*ro*, to a master.
Ac. Magist-*rum*, a master.
V. Magist-*er*, O master!
Ab. Magist-*ro*, by a master.

Plural.

- N. Magist-*ri*, masters.
G. Magist-*rōrum*, of masters.
D. Magist-*ris*, to masters.
Ac. Magist-*rōs*, masters.
V. Magist-*ri*, O masters!
Ab. Magist-*ris*, by masters.

Singular.

- N. Puer, a boy.
G. Puer-*i*, of a boy.
D. Puer-*o*, to a boy.
Ac. Puer-*um*, a boy.
V. Puer, O boy!
Ab. Puer-*o*, by a boy.

Plural.

- N. Puer-*i*, boys.
G. Puer-*orum*, of boys.
D. Puer-*is*, to boys.
Ac. Puer-*ōs*, boys.
V. Puer-*i*, O boys!
Ab. Puer-*is*, by boys.

The Nominative and Vocative are alike in both numbers, except nouns in *us* of the second declension, which make *e* in the vocative; as *Dominus*, *Domine*. Also *Proper* names in *ius*, with *genius*, a genius, and *filius*, a son, form the vocative in *i* by dropping *us* of the nominative; as *Virgilius*, *Virgili*; *filius*, *genius*, *fili*, *geni*. Other nouns in *ius* have *e* in the vocative.

Singular.

- N. Dōmīnus, a lord.
G. Domin-*i*, of a lord.
D. Domin-*o*, to a lord.
Ac. Domin-*um*, a lord.
V. Domin-*e*, O lord!
Ab. Domin-*o*, by a lord.

Plural.

- N. Domin-*i*, lords.
G. Domin-*orum*, of lords.
D. Domin-*is*, to lords.
Ac. Domin-*ōs*, lords.
V. Domin-*i*, O lords!
Ab. Domin-*is*, by lords.

Deus, God, is thus declined,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Deus.</i>	N. <i>Dei, Dii, Di.</i>
G. <i>Dei.</i>	G. <i>Deorum, Deum.</i>
D. <i>Deo.</i>	D. <i>Deis, Diis, Dis.</i>
Ac. <i>Deum.</i>	Ac. <i>Deos.</i>
V. <i>O Deus !</i>	V. <i>Dei, Dii, Di !</i>
Ab. <i>Deo.</i>	Ab. <i>Deis, Diis, Dis.</i>

Nouns in *um*, and all other neuter nouns, have the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases alike in both numbers; and in the plural these cases end in *a*.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Bellum, a war.</i>	N. <i>Bell-a, wars.</i>
G. <i>Bell-i, of a war.</i>	G. <i>Bell-orum, of wars.</i>
D. <i>Bell-o, to a war.</i>	D. <i>Bell-is, to wars.</i>
Ac. <i>Bell-um, a war.</i>	Ac. <i>Bell-a, wars.</i>
V. <i>Bell-um, O war !</i>	V. <i>Bell-a, O wars !</i>
Ab. <i>Bell-o, by a war.</i>	Ab. <i>Bell-is, by wars.</i>

NOTE 1.—The nouns that retain the *e* before *r* in the genitive and the other oblique cases are the following: *puer*, a boy, *adulter*, an adulterer, *socer*, a father-in-law, *gener*, a son-in-law, *Liber*, Bacchus, *Mulciber*, Vulcan, *presbyter*, an elder, *liberi*, children, *Vesper*, the evening. *Iber* and *Celtiber* make the *e* long, as *Ibēri*, *Celtibēri*. Compound words in *fer* and *ger* retain the *e*, as *Lucifer*, the morning star, *furcifer*, a knave, *frugifer*, bearing fruit, *armiger*, an armour-bearer, *corniger*, a bull, &c. All other nouns in *er* reject the *e*.

2. *Vir*, a man, and its compounds retain the *i* before *r*, as Gen. *virī*, of a man, *leviri*, of a brother-in-law.

3. The poets sometimes make the vocative of nouns in *us* like the nominative, as *O fluvius*, *O Latinus* for *O fluvio*, *O Latine*. This sometimes, but more rarely, occurs in prose.

4. The poets also change *er* into *us*; as N. *Evander* or *Evandrus*, Voc. *Evander* or *Evandre*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

The third declension makes the genitive singular in *is*, and the genitive plural either in *um* or *ium*.

Nouns *increasing** in the Genitive case generally make *um* in the Genitive plural.

* In this Declension, many nouns *increase* in the genitive case singular; that is, they have more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative case; thus *Lapis*, *Lapidis*, has *two* in the Nominative and *three* in the Genitive. When the number of syllables is the same both in the Nominative and Genitive cases, the noun is said *not* to increase; as N. *Nubes*, G. *Nubis*.

Sermo, a speech, masculine.

Singular.

- N. *Sermo, a speech.*
 G. *Sermō-nis, of a speech.*
 D. *Sermo-ni, to a speech.*
 Ac. *Sermo-nem, a speech.*
 V. *Sermo, O speech!*
 Ab. *Sermo-ne, by a speech.*

Plural.

- N. *Sermo-nes, speeches.*
 G. *Sermō-num, of speeches.*
 D. *Sermo-nibus, to speeches.*
 Ac. *Sermo-nes, speeches.*
 V. *Sermo-nes, O speeches!*
 Ab. *Sermo-nibus, by speeches.*

Lapis, a stone, masculine.

Singular.

- N. *Lap-is, a stone.*
 G. *Lap-idis, of a stone.*
 D. *Lap-idi, to a stone.*
 Ac. *Lap-idem, a stone.*
 V. *Lap-is, O stone!*
 Ab. *Lap-ide, by a stone.*

Plural.

- N. *Lap-ides, stones.*
 G. *Lap-īdum, of stones.*
 D. *Lap-īdibus, to stones.*
 Ac. *Lap-ides, stones.*
 V. *Lap-ides, O stones!*
 Ab. *Lap-īdibus, by stones.*

Opus, a work, neuter.

Singular.

- N. *Op-us, a work.*
 G. *Op-ēris, of a work.*
 D. *Op-eri, to a work.*
 Ac. *Op-us, a work.*
 V. *Op-us, O work!*
 Ab. *Op-ere, by a work.*

Plural.

- N. *Op-ēra, works.*
 G. *Op-erum, of works.*
 D. *Op-ērībus, to works.*
 Ac. *Op-era, works.*
 V. *Op-era, O works!*
 Ab. *Op-ērībus, by works.*

These nouns make *ium* in the Genitive Plural;—

1. Nouns in *es* and *is* not increasing in the Genitive singular, have *ium* in the Genitive Plural.

Except *canis*, a dog, *juvenis*, a young man, *mugilis*, a mullet, *opes*, (plural) riches, *panis*, bread, *strigilis*, a scraper, *strues*, a heap, *vates*, a prophet, which make *um* in the Genitive plural. *Apis* and *volucris* generally make *um*, sometimes *ium*.

The following words in *er*, not increasing, make the genitive plural in *um*,—*pater*, *mater*, *frater*, and *accipiter*; other words in *er*, as *imber*, a shower, *linter*, a boot, *uter*, a bottle, and *venter*, the belly, make the genitive plural in *ium*.

Singular.

N. Nub-es, *a cloud*.
 G. Nub-is, *of a cloud*.
 D. Nub-i, *to a cloud*.
 Ac. Nub-em, *a cloud*.
 V. Nub-es, *O cloud!*
 Ab. Nub-e, *by a cloud*.

Plural.

N. Nub-es, *clouds*.
 G. Nub-um, *of clouds*.
 D. Nub-ibus, *to clouds*.
 Ac. Nub-es, *clouds*.
 V. Nub-es, *O clouds!*
 Ab. Nub-ibus, *by clouds*.

2. Nouns of *one* syllable in *as*, *is*; as *mas*, *lis*; or in *s* or *x* after a consonant; as *mons*, *arx*, have *ium* in the genitive plural.

But *lynx* and other words of Greek origin have generally *um*; as *lynx*, *lynxum*, *Arabe*, *gryps*, *Arabum*, *gryphum*.

Also words of one syllable ending in *s* preceded by other vowels than *a* or *i* generally have *um*.

Nouns of *two*, or *more* than two syllables in *ns*, *rs*, and *as*, genitive *ātis*, generally make *um*, but sometimes *ium*; as *cliens*, a client, *clientum* or *clientium*.

Penātes, *optimātes*, and the names of nations in *as*, *Fidēnas*, *Arpīnas*, have *ium*.

Mons, *a mountain*.*Singular.*

N. Mons, *a mountain*.
 G. Mon-tis, *of a mountain*.
 D. Mon-ti, *to a mountain*.
 Ac. Mon-tem, *a mountain*.
 V. Mons, *O mountain!*
 Ab. Mon-te, *by a mountain*.

Plural.

N. Mon-tes, *mountains*.
 G. Mon-tium, *of mountains*.
 D. Mon-tibus, *to mountains*.
 Ac. Mon-tes, *mountains*.
 V. Mon-tes, *O mountains!*
 Ab. Mon-tibus, *by mountains*.

3. The following nouns also make *ium* in the genitive plural:

Caro, <i>flesh</i> .	Fraus, <i>fraud</i> .	Nox, <i>night</i> .
Cor, <i>the heart</i> .	Lar, <i>a household</i>	Os, <i>ossis, a bone</i> .
Cos, <i>a whetstone</i> .	god.	Par, <i>a pair</i> .
Dos, <i>a dowry</i> .	Mus, <i>a mouse</i> .	Quiris, <i>a Roman</i> .
Faux, <i>the jaws</i> .	Nix, <i>snow</i> .	Samnis, <i>a Samnite</i> .

The compounds of *uncia* and *as* have likewise *ium*; as *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *sextans*, two ounces, *sextantium*.

4. Neuters of the third declension in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative singular, *ia* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, and *ium* in the genitive.

But these words, *baccar*, an herb called lady's glove, *far*, corn, *hepar*, the liver, *jubar*, a sun-beam, *nectar*, nectar, *par*, a match or pair, *sal*, salt, and towns in *e*, as *Præneste*, have *e* in the ablative. *Far* makes *farra* in the plural, *sal* has no plural.

Singular.

N. Rēt-*e*, a net.
G. Ret-*is*, of a net.
D. Ret-*i*, to a net.
Ac. Ret-*e*, a net.
V. Ret-*e*, O net!
Ab. Ret-*i*, by a net.

Plural.

N. Ret-*ia*, nets.
G. Ret-*ium*, of nets.
D. Ret-*ibus*, to nets.
Ac. Ret-*ia*, nets.
V. Ret-*ia*, O nets!
Ab. Ret-*ibus*, by nets.

Irregulars of the Third Declension.

1. *Genitive Singular.* Cicero and other writers of the best age, sometimes form from Greek proper names in *es*, and especially from those in *cles*, a genitive in *i* instead of *is*; as *Achilli*, *Themistocli*. In nouns in *is*, *idis*, the poets frequently use the Greek termination *os* for *is*; as *Daphnis*, *Daphnidos*. But the Greek form is not common in prose.

2. *The Dative Singular.* The dative singular anciently ended in *e*.

Accusative Singular.

3. The following nouns in *is* form the accusative in *im*:

Amussis, *f.* a mason's rule.
Buris, *f.* the beam of a plough.
Cannābis, *f.* hemp.
Cucūmis, *m.* a cucumber.
Gummis, *f.* gum.
Mephitis, *f.* a strong smell.

Ravis, *f.* a hoarseness.
Sināpis, *f.* mustard.
Sitis, *f.* thirst.
Tussis, *f.* a cough.
Vis, *f.* strength.

4. Proper names in *is* have *im* in the accusative; as—*First*, Names of cities and other places; as *Bilbilis*, *f.* a city in Spain; *Syrtis*, *f.* a quicksand on the coast of Africa.

Secondly, Names of rivers; as *Tibēris*, *m.* the Tiber; *Bætis*, *m.* the Guadalquivir.

Thirdly, Names of gods; as *Anubis*, *m.* *Ostis*, *m.* Egyptian deities.

The preceding nouns have sometimes *ia* in the accusative; as *Bilbilin*, *Tiberin*, *Anubin*.

5. The following nouns in *is* have *em* or *im* in the accusative:

Aquālis, *m.* a water-pot.
Clavis, *f.* a key.
Cutis, *f.* the skin.
Febris, *f.* a fever.
Lens, *f.* lentile.
Navis, *f.* a ship.
Pelvis, *f.* a basin.

Puppis, *f.* the stern of a ship.
Restis, *f.* a rope.
Securis, *f.* an axe.
Sementis, *f.* a sowing.
Strigilis, *f.* a curry-comb or scraper.
Turris, *f.* a tower.

Pelvis, *puppis*, *restis*, *securis*, and *turris*, have much more frequently *im*; the others have commonly *em*.

6. Nouns which have been adopted from the Greek, sometimes retain *a* in the accusative; as *heros*, m. a hero, *heroa*. This form, however, is seldom employed by the best prose writers, and is chiefly confined to Proper Names, except in *air*, m. the air; *æther*, m. the sky; *delphin*, m. a dolphin; and *Pan*, which commonly make *ætra*, *æthéra*, *delphína*, and *Pána*.

Ablative Singular.

7. Nouns in *is* which have *im* in the Accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as *vis*, *vim*, *vi*.

But *canābīs*, *Batīs*, *sināpis*, and *Tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

8. Nouns in *is*, which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as *navis*, *nave*, or *navi*.

But *cutis* and *restis* have *e* only; *securis*, *sementis*, and *strigilis* have seldom *e*.

9. The following nouns, which have *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative:

Amnis, m. a river.
Anguis, m. & f. a snake.
Avis, f. a bird.
Civis, c. a citizen.
Classis, f. a fleet.
Finis, m. & f. an end.
Fustis, m. a staff.
Ignis, m. a fire.
Imber, m. a shower.
Mugil, m. a mullet.

Occiput, n. the hind-head.
Orbis, m. a circle.
Pars, f. a part.
Postis, m. a door-post.
Pugil, c. a pugilist.
Rus, n. the country.
Sors, f. a lot.
Supellex, f. furniture.
Unguis, m. a nail.
Vectis, m. a lever.

Finis, *mugil*, *occiput*, *pugil*, *rus*, *supellex*, and *vectis*, have either *e* or *i*; but the others have much more frequently *e*.

Names of towns, when they denote the place in or at which any thing is done, take *e* or *i*; as *Carthagine*, or *Carthagini*.

Canalis, m. or f. a water-pipe, has *canali* only.

Names of months in *is* or *er* have the ablative in *i*; as *Aprilis*, *September*, *Aprilis*, *Septembri*; and those nouns in *is* which were originally adjectives; as *adilis*, *afinis*, *diptennis*, *familiasis*, *sodalis*, *volucris*, &c., though the nouns of this last class also admit of *e*. *Rudis*, a rod, and *juvenis*, a youth, have *e* only.

Genitive, Dative, and Accusative Plural.

Genitive. *Bos*, an ox, makes the genitive plural in *bovm*. The noun *ales*, and the plural noun *cellites*, make *um* and *uum* in the Genitive Plural.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; as *Macedo*, *Macedōnum*. But those which have *a* or *is* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the plural in *on*; as *Epigramma*, *epigrammatum*, or *epigrammatōn*, an epigram; *metamorphōsis*, *tum*, or *ebn*.

Dative. Nouns in *ma* have *tis* as well as *tibus*; as *poema*, a poem, *poematibus*, or *poematīs*. The Greek termination *si* or *sin*, is very uncommon in prose, but it is sometimes used by the poets.

Bos makes the dative and ablative in *bobus* or *bubus*; *sus* has *suius*, or *subus*.

Accusative. Nouns which have *tum* in the genitive plural formed the accusative originally in *is*, also written *eis*, instead of *es*, as, acc. plur. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

If the accusative singular ends in *a*, the accusative plural ends also in *as*; as *lampas*, *lampadem*, or *lampada*, *lampades*, *lampadas*. This form, however, is rarely used in prose.

Vis, *bos*, and *jus-jurandum*, are thus declined:

Singular.
 N. *Vis*, *bos*, *jus-jurandum*.
 G. *Vis*, *bovis*, *juris-jurandi*.
 D. *Vi*, *bovi*, *juri-jurando*.
 Ac. *Vim*, *bovem*, *jus-jurandum*.
 V. *Vis*, *bos*, *jus-jurandum*.
 Ab. *Vi*, *bove*, *jure-jurando*.

Plural.
 N. *Vires*, *boves*, *jura-juranda*.
 G. *Virium*, *bovm*, *jurum-jurandorum*.
 D. *Viribus*, { *bobus*, *juribus-jurandis*.
 bubus,
 Ac. *Vires*, *boves*, *jura-juranda*.
 V. *Vires*, *boves*, *jura-juranda*.
 Ab. *Viribus*, { *bobus*, *juribus-jurandis*.
 bubus,

FOURTH DECLENSION.

The fourth declension makes the genitive singular in *ūs*.

Nouns in *us* are generally masculine.

Singular.

- N. Grad-us, *a step*.
 G. Grad-ūs, *of a step*.
 D. Grad-ui, *to a step*.
 Ac. Grad-um, *a step*.
 V. Grad-us, *O step!*
 Ab. Grad-u, *by a step*.

Plural.

- N. Grad-us, *steps*.
 G. Grad-ūum, *of steps*.
 D. Grad-ibus, *to steps*.
 Ac. Grad-us, *steps*.
 V. Grad-us, *O steps!*
 Ab. Grad-ibus, *by steps*.

Nouns in *u* are neuter and are undeclined in the singular; in the plural they follow the rule of neuters; as,

Singular.

- N. Corn-u, *a horn*.
 G. Corn-u, *of a horn*.
 D. Corn-u, *to a horn*.
 Ac. Corn-u, *a horn*.
 V. Corn-u, *O horn!*
 Ab. Corn-u, *by a horn*.

Plural.

- N. Corn-ua, *horns*.
 G. Corn-ūum, *of horns*.
 D. Corn-ibus, *to horns*.
 Ac. Corn-ua, *horns*.
 V. Corn-ua, *O horns!*
 Ab. Corn-ibus, *by horns*.

Iesus or *Jesus* makes in the accusative *Iesum* or *Jesum*, and *Iesu* or *Jesu* in all other cases.

The dative singular is sometimes contracted into *u*; as *metu*.

Acus, a needle, *arcus*, a bow, *artus*, a joint, *ficus*, a fig, *lacus*, a lake, *partus*, a birth, *pecus*, cattle, *querqus*, an oak, *specus*, a den, *tribus*, a tribe, make the dative and ablative cases plural in *ibus*. *Genu*, the knee, *portus*, a harbour, *tonitru*, thunder, and *veru*, a spit, make *ibus* or *ubus*.

Domus, a house, is partly of the second and partly of the fourth declension; thus,

Singular.

- N. Domus.
 G. Domūs, or mi.
 D. Domui, or mo.
 Ac. Domum.
 V. Domus.
 Ab. Domo.

Plural.

- N. Domus.
 G. Domuum, or ōrum.
 D. Domibus.
 Ac. Domus, or os.
 V. Domus.
 Ab. Domibus.

Domūs, in the genitive, signifies *of a house*; and *domi* is used only to signify *at home*, or *of home*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

The fifth declension forms the genitive singular in *ēi*.

Singular.

- N. Dies, *a day*.
 G. Di-ēi, *of a day*.
 D. Di-ei, *to a day*.
 Ac. Di-em, *a day*.
 V. Di-es, *O day!*
 Ab. Di-e, *by a day*.

Plural.

- N. Dies, *days*.
 G. Di-ērum, *of days*.
 D. Di-ēbus, *to days*.
 Ac. Di-es, *days*.
 V. Di-es, *O days!*
 Ab. Di-ēbus, *by days*.

Three Nouns, *fides*, faith, *res*, a thing, and *spes*, hope, make the genitive singular in *ei* short.

Dies and *res*, are the only nouns of the Fifth Declension which are complete in both the singular and plural; *acies*, *effigies*, *facies*, *scries*, *species*, and *spes*, are complete in the singular, but have only the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative in the plural; the other nouns have no plural.

Nouns of the fifth Declension are all feminine, except *dies*, which is masculine or feminine in the singular, and only masculine in the plural. *Meridies*, the mid-day or noon, is masculine, and does not occur in the plural.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, end in *e*.

Res-publica is thus declined :

<i>Sing.</i>	N. & V. Res-publica. Ac. Rem-publicam.	G. Rei-publicæ. Ab. Re-publicæ.	D. Rei-publicæ.
<i>Plur.</i>	N. & V. Res-publicæ. Ac. Res-publicas.	G. Rerum-publicarum. Ab. Rebus-publicis.	D. Rebus-publicis.

DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Greek words of this declension end in *as*, *e*, *es*.

<i>Sing.</i>	N. <i>Ænēas</i> . G. <i>Æneæ</i> . D. <i>Æneæ</i> . Ac. <i>Æneam</i> or <i>an</i> . V. <i>Ænea</i> . Ab. <i>Æneā</i> .	<i>Penélōpe</i> . <i>Penelope</i> . <i>Penelope</i> . <i>Penelopen</i> . <i>Penelope</i> . <i>Penelope</i> .	<i>Anchises</i> . <i>Anchisæ</i> . <i>Anchisæ</i> . <i>Anchisen</i> , <i>em</i> . <i>Anchise</i> . <i>Anchise</i> .
--------------	---	---	--

These nouns, being proper names, have no plural, except when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *menes*.

To the termination in *es* belong patronymics in *des*; as *Pelides*, the son of Pelus, with the following proper names: *Aceates*, *Achates*, *Agyrtes*, *Antiphates*, *Boites*, *Bates*, *Laertes*, *Leucates*, *Menates*, *Philoctetes*, *Polites*, *Procrustes*, *Theristes*, *Thyestes*, *Zetes*. Add names of jewels and wines; as *Achates*, *Aromatites*. Other names in *es* belong to the third declension.

Nouns in *es* have sometimes *ā* in the vocative, and more rarely *ā*. Nouns in *etes* have *eta* in the vocative. They also sometimes form the accusative in *em*, and the ablative in *a*.

SECOND DECLENSION.

N. Andrō-gēōs.	Pa-phōs.	Pan-thūs.	Peli-on or um.
G. Andro-geō or geī.	Pa-phi.	Pan-thi.	Peli-i.
D. Andro-geo.	Pa-phō.	Pan-tho.	Peli-o.
Ac. Andro-geōn or geum.	Pa-phōn.	{ Pan-thum.	Peli-on or um.
V. Andro-geōs or geō.	{ Pa-phōs.	{ Pan-thun.	Peli-on or um.
Ab. Andro-geō.	{ Pa-phe.	Pan-tho.	Peli-o.
	Pa-phō.		

In the vocative, *Chorus* has *Chore* or *Chorus*; *Chaos* and *Athōs* have *Chaos* and *Athōs*. When Greek nouns of this declension have a plural, it is declined like Latin nouns of this declension. The genitive plural is sometimes in *ōn*; as *Georgica*, *Georgicōn*.

Some nouns in *us* of this declension belong likewise to the third; thus,

N.	G.	D.	Ac.	V.	Ab.
Orphēus,	{ ōi,	ōo,	{ ōon,	—	ōo; of the second.
	{ ōos,	ōi,	{ ōa,	eu,	—; of the third.
Œdipus,	{ i,	o,	um,	—	o; of the second.
	{ ōdis,	ōdi,	ōdem,	u,	ōde; of the third.

Proper names in *es* of the third declension sometimes take this form; as

N. Achilles,	G. Achillis, Achilleos,	of the third.
Achillēus,	Achillēi,	of the second.

Greek words in *eus*, when the *eu* is a diphthong, are considered of the third declension.

THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Nouns increasing *impure*, that is, such as have a consonant before *is* or *os* of the genitive, as *Lampas*, *Poëma*, Gen. *Lampādīs*, *Poemātis*, are declined as below.

So also are *Minos*, *Tros*, and *heros*, though increasing *pure*, that is, in *is* after a vowel, as *Minois*, *Minois*.

In the accusative. { *Pan*, *delphin*, *der*, *æther*, have generally *a*.
Men's names in *is* have *im*, *in*, or *idem*.
Women's have *ida* or *idem*; (never *im* or *in*) so also *chlamys*.
Cities have *im*, *ida*, *idem*.

N.	Gen.	Dat.	Ac.	V.	Ab.
<i>Sing.</i> Lamp-as,	{ ādis,	adi,	{ adem,	as,	ade.
	{ ādos,		{ ada,		
<i>Plu.</i> Lamp-ādes,	adum,	adibus,	{ ades,	ades,	adibus.
			{ adas,		
<i>Sing.</i> Tro-as,	{ ādis,	adi,	{ adem,	as,	ade.
	{ ādos,		{ ada,		
<i>Plu.</i> Tro-ades,	adum,	{ adibus,	{ ades,	ades,	{ adibus,
		{ asi or asin,	{ adas,		{ asi or asin.
<i>Sing.</i> Tros,	Trois,	Troi,	{ Troem,	Tros,	Troe.
			{ Troa,		
<i>Sing.</i> Pan,	Panos,	Pani,	Pana,	Pan,	Pane.
<i>Sing.</i> Par-is,	idis or idos,	idi,	{ im, in,	i,	ide.
			{ idem,		
<i>Sing.</i> Phyll-is,	idis or idos,	idi,	idem or ida,	i or is,	ide.
<i>Sing.</i> Chlam-ys,	ŷdis or ŷdos,	ydi,	ydem or yda,	ys,	yde.
<i>Sing.</i> Anl-is,	idis,	idi,	im, ida, idem	i,	ide.

2. Nouns which have *is* in the genitive of the same number of syllables as the nominative are declined in the following manner; also those which increase *pure*; the names of cities in *polis*; as *Pentāpōlis*; and also *Atys*, *basis*, *ciddaris*, *crisis*, *Cōtys*, *metamorphōsis*, *syntaxis*, *synthēsis*; thus,

N.	Gen.	Dat.	Ac.	V.	Ab.
<i>Sing.</i> Hæres-is,	is, ios, eos,	i,	in, im,	i,	i.
<i>Plu.</i> Hæres-es,	ium, eōn,	esi,	es,	es,	esi.
<i>Sing.</i> Cap-ys,	ylis or yos,	yi,	ym or yn,	y,	ye or y.

Nouns in *eus* (monosyllable) have in the genitive *eos*, and in the accusative *ea*; as *Tyd-eus*, *Thes-eus*, genitive *Tydeos*, accusative *Tydea*.

Neuter nouns have the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike in the singular, in the plural these cases end in *a*.

In the genitive plural, Greek nouns have generally *um* or *ōn*. Nouns in *is*, increasing *pure*, have *ium*, sometimes *eōn*.

The *dative* and *ablative* plural are in *ibus*, or follow the Greek form *si* before a consonant, or *sin* before a vowel; as *Troāsi*, or *Troasin*, for *Troādibus*.

Nouns in *ma*, as *poëma*, have *tis* rather than *tibus* in the dative and ablative plural, because the ancient Latin writers used them as if of the first declension.

If the *accusative* singular end in *a*, the accusative plural will end in *as*.

In the *vocative* singular, the *s* of the nominative is dropped; as N. *Thomas*, V. *Thoma*.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of this declension are thus declined; N. *Manto*, G. *Mantūs*, D. *Manto*, Ac. *Manto*, V. *Manto*, Ab. *Manto*. *Dido* is both of the third and fourth declension; thus, N. *Dido*, G. *Didōnis* or *Didūs*, D. *Didōni* or *Dido*, &c.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE SUBSTANTIVES.

An *Irregular* noun is one that is not declined according to the rules.

Some irregulars have different genders in the singular and plural; as *Cælum*, heaven; plural *Cæli*.

Others have different declensions; as *laurus*, a laurel tree; genitive *lauri* and *laurūs*.

A *Defective* noun is one that has not all the cases or numbers.

Those defectives which have only one case, are called *Monoptotes*; as *noctu*, by night.

Those which have only two cases, are called *Diptotes*; as genitive *spontis*, ablative *sponte*, a will.

Those which have only three cases, are called *Triptotes*; as dative *precī*, accusative *precem*, ablative *prece*, a prayer. This, however, and many of the same kind, have all the cases in the plural.

Some nouns have no plural, such as most *proper names*, names of *arts*, *herbs*, *liquors*, *metals*, *virtues*, *vices*, different kinds of *corn*, and *abstract nouns*.

Some nouns have no singular; as *castra*, *divitiæ*.

RULES TO FIND THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

GENERAL RULES ACCORDING TO THE SIGNIFICATION.

1. *Masculine*. The names of *Males*, and nouns denoting the employments of men, are *masculine*; as *Pater*, a father, *Scriba*, a scribe. The names also of *winds* and *months*, *rivers* and *mountains*, are *masculine*.

Exception. Many names of rivers and mountains take their gender from the special rules; thus, *Albula*, *Ætna*, are feminine; *Plemmyrium*, *Soracte*, are neuter. The names of rivers of the first declension in *a* are commonly masculine in prose, but feminine in poetry.

2. *Feminine.* The names of *Females* are *feminine*; as *mater*, a mother, *vacca*, a cow. Also the names of *Countries*, *Islands*, *Cities*, *Jewels*, *Poems*, *Trees*, *Herbs*, and *Ships*, are *feminine*.

Exceptions. 1. Of the names of *Countries*, those in *um*, and the plurals in *a*; as *Latium*, *Bactra*, are neuter according to their termination. *Bosporus*, *Pontus*, *Hellespontus*, are masculine.—2. Of *Islands*, some ending in *um*, and the Egyptian *Delta*, are neuter. *Pharos* is either masculine or feminine.—3. Of *Towns*, the following are masculine: all plurals in *i*; as *Veii*, *Delphi*; so also *Croto*, *Hippo*, *Narbo*, *Martius*, *Frusino*, *Sulmo*, *Tunes*, (*Tunētis*). The following are neuter: those in *um*; as *Tusculum*: plurals in *a*, genitive *orum*; as *Susa*, *Arbēla*, *Leuctra*: indeclinables in *i* and *y*; as *Illūstargi*, *Asy*: the nouns *Argos*, *Ansur*, *Gadir*, *Tuder*, *Nepes*, *Hispal*, (*His gen.*) *Tibur*; the names of Italian towns in *e*, as *Præneste*, are used sometimes as *feminines*, and sometimes as *neuters*.—4. Of *Jewels*, the following are masculine: *Carbunculus*, *pyropus*, *opālus*, *beryllus*, *smaragdus*.—5. Of *Trees*: *Rhamnus*, *apinus*, and those ending in *ster*, as *oleaster*, are masculine; *larix*, *lotus*, *rubus*, *cypressus*, are doubtful, the two first are rather *feminine*; *acer*, *siler*, *saber*, *robur*, *thus*, and those ending in *um*, are neuter.—6. Of *Herbs*: *Intybus*, *hellébōrus*, *raphānus*, are generally masculine, rarely *feminine*; *Cytinus* is generally masculine. In botany the names of plants take their gender from the special rules.

3. *Common.* Names which signify an office or quality, that may belong either to man or woman, are of the *common* gender, that is, either masculine or feminine; as *Parens*, a father or mother.

The following lines comprehend nearly all the nouns of the Common Gender:

Conjux atque parens, infans, patruēlis et hæres,
Affinis, vindex, judex, dux, miles et hostis,
Augur et antistes, juvenis, conviva, sacerdos,
Muniqueceps, vates, adolescens, civis et auctor,
Custos, nemo, comes, testis, sus, bosque, canisque,
Interpresque, cliens, princeps, præs, martyr et obses,
Atque index, hospes, queis adde satelles et exul.

To these may be added *contubernalis*.

Antistes, *cliens*, and *hospes*, frequently change their termination to express the *feminine*; thus, *antistita*, *clienta*, *hospita*.

There are some nouns which, though applied to persons are, on account of their termination, always neuter; as *mancipium*, *servitium*, a slave. In like manner, *opēra*, slaves or day-labourers, *vigilæ*, watches by night, *excubiæ*, watches by day or night; *noxia*, guilty persons; though applied to men, are always *feminine*.

4. *Epicene.* The names of *wild-beasts*, *birds*, *fishes*, and *insects*, are said to be of the *Epicene* gender, because they have only one termination to express both sexes; thus *passer*, a sparrow, both male and female. When any particular sex is intended, the words *mas*, *mascula*, or *femina* were usually added; as *mas passer*, a male sparrow, *femina passer*, a female sparrow.

Words belonging to this gender usually follow the gender of their termination; thus *passer* is masculine because nouns in *er* are masculine, and *aquila*, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a*, of the first declension, are feminine.

5. *Doubtful*. Some few words are of the *Doubtful* gender, that is, they are used either as masculine or feminine, without regard to the sex; as *anguis*, a snake, *dama*, a deer.

6. *Neuter*. The names of letters, and all infinitives, imperatives, adverbs, and other particles used substantively, are *neuter*.

NOTE.—In English, all inanimate objects are neuter; but in Latin, on the contrary, they may be masculine, feminine, or neuter, according to the *terminations* of the genitive, or to their *declensions*. We shall therefore furnish the student with particular rules for the gender of these words according to the termination of the genitive case. It must, however, be understood that the following rules do not supersede those already given, but have reference solely to those that are distinguished by the *ending of the genitive case*.

THE FIRST SPECIAL RULE.

Nouns not increasing in the genitive; as *nubes*, *nubis*, are feminine.

EXCEPTIONS.

MASCULINES.

Nouns in *nis* are masculine:

*Cum callis, cassis, caulisque, comēta, planēta,
Axis, cenchris, collis, folis, fascis, aquālis,
Fustis, mensis, piscis, postis, sentis et ensis,
Orbis, torris, vectis, vepres, vermis et unguis.*

To these may be added,—*Adria*, the Adriatic sea; nouns from the Greek in *as* and *es*; as *tiāras*, *acīndes*; the compounds of *as*; as *centussis*.

Nouns in *er* and *us* are masculine. But these are feminine:

*Vannus, acus, ficusque, colusque, domus, manus, idus,
Carbasus, atque tribus, porticus, alvus, humus.*

With many words of Greek origin; as *abyssus*, *antidōtus*, *atōmus*, *dialectus*, *diphthongus*, *erēmus*, *methōdus*, *periōdus*, *pharus*, and several others.

NEUTERS.

Nouns in *e* of the third declension are neuter.

Nouns in *um* are neuter.

Nouns undeclined are neuter.

Virus and *pelāgus* are neuter.

Vulgus, *sexus*, *specus*, are masculine and neuter.

Cacoëthes, *hippōmānes*, *nepenthes*, *panāces*, *chaos*, *melos*, *epos*, are neuter.

These are doubtful, that is, masculine or feminine, *anguis*, m. *bālāmus*, *barbitus*, *canālis*, m. *clunis*, m. *corbis*, f. *dama*, f. *finis*, m. (*fines*, borders or territories, is always masculine,) *grossus*, *linter*, f. *pampīnus*, m. *penus*, *phasēlus*, m.

Those words to which *m* is annexed, are used in the masculine in preference to the feminine; and those to which *f* is annexed, are feminine rather than masculine.

THE SECOND SPECIAL RULE.

Nouns increasing long in the genitive; as *virtus*, *virtūtis*, are feminine.

EXCEPTIONS.

MASCULINES.

Nouns in *er*, *or*, and *os* are masculine, except *cos* and *dos*, which are feminine.

Nouns of more than one syllable in *n*, *ens*, *as*, genitive *antis*, and the names of numbers and substances in *o*, are masculine. Add,

Sol, *ren*, *splen*, *fons*, *mons*, *pons*, *mus*, *as*, *besque*, *meridies*,
His *dens*, *sermo*, *lebes*, *magnes*, *thoraxque*, *tapesque*.

Likewise the compounds of *as*, as *quadrans*, *dodrans*.

NEUTERS.

Nouns of more than one syllable in *al* and *ar* are neuter.

Add,

Crus, *jus*, *pus*, *rus*, *thus*, *fel*, *mel*, *vas-vasis* et *alec*,
Æs, *spinther*, *cor*, *lac*, *far*, *ver*, *os-oris* et *ossis*.

Sal (salt) is masc. rarely neut. *Sales* (plural) always masculine.

These are doubtful: *arrhabo*, m. *bubo*, m. *calx*, m. a heel or end, *calx*, f. lime, *limax*, f. *lynx*, f. *perdix*, f. *rudens*, m. *serpens*, *stirps*, the trunk of a tree. *Dies* is doubtful in the singular, masculine in the plural. *Animans* is of all genders.

THE THIRD SPECIAL RULE.

Nouns increasing short in the genitive; as *sanguis*, *sanguinis*, are masculine.

EXCEPTIONS.

FEMININES.

Nouns of more than two syllables in *do* and *go*, are feminine.

All nouns in *as*, gen. *adis*, and in *is*, gen. *idis*, except *lapis*, which is masculine.

Junge *pecus* (pecūdis) *coxendix*, *trabsque*, *supellexque*, *Appendix*, *crux*, *fax*, *nex*, *nix*, *nux*, *pixque*, *filix*, *strix*, *Grando*, *fides*, *compes*, *forceps*, *seges*, *arbor*, *hyemsque*, *Scobs*, *carex*, *forfex*, *res*, *spes*, *sandyxque*, *tegesque*.

These also are feminine: *tomex*, *īcis*, a cord; *merges*, *ītis*, a handful of corn; *smilax*, *ācis*, a yew tree, or herb.

NEUTERS.

Nouns in *a*, *ar*, *en*, *put*, *ur*, *us*, and names of plants in *er*, are neuter, except *pecten* and *furfur*, which are both masculine.

His quoque, *marmor*, *ador*, neutris, *jungasque*, *cadaver*.

His *æquor*, *tuber*, *verber* et *uber*, *iter*.

These are doubtful: *adepts*, m. *cinis*, m. *cortex*, m. *grus*, f. *hystrix*, f. *margo*, m. *obex*, m. *pulvis*, m. *pumex*, m. *rumex*, m. *sardonyx*, m. and f. *scrobs*, m. *silex*, f. *varix*, m.

ADJECTIVES.

An *Adjective* is a word added to a substantive to express its quality, size, shape, colour, number, quantity, or any other circumstance belonging to it; as "A good man; a bad heart; a large hill; a square table; the green grass; twenty horses; much noise; this hat."

In Latin there are three sorts of adjectives: 1. Of three terminations, as *dur-us*, *dur-a*, *dur-um*, hard;—2. Of two terminations, as *dulcis*, *dulce*, sweet;—3. Of one termination, as *felix*, happy.

Adjectives of Three Terminations.

When there are *three* terminations in a case, the first is masculine, the second feminine, and the third neuter.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Dur-us,	a,	um.	N. Dur-i,	æ,	a.
G. Dur-i,	æ,	i.	G. Dur-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum.
D. Dur-o,	æ,	o.	D. Dur-is.		
Ac. Dur-um,	am,	um.	Ac. Dur-os,	as,	a.
V. Dur-e,	a,	um.	V. Dur-i,	æ,	a.
Ab. Dur-o,	â,	o.	Ab. Dur-is.		

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Liber,	ĕra,	ĕrum.	N. Liber-i,	æ,	a.
G. Liber-i,	æ,	i.	G. Liber-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum.
D. Liber-o,	æ,	o.	D. Liber-is.		
Ac. Liber-um,	am,	um.	Ac. Liber-os,	as,	a.
V. Liber,	era,	erum.	V. Liber-i,	æ,	a.
Ab. Liber-o,	â,	o.	Ab. Liber-is.		

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Nig-er,	ra,	rum.	N. Nigr-i,	æ,	a.
G. Nigr-i,	æ,	i.	G. Nigr-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum.
D. Nigr-o,	æ,	o.	D. Nigris.		
Ac. Nigr-um,	am,	um.	Ac. Nigr-os,	as,	a.
V. Nig-er,	ra,	rum.	V. Nigr-i,	æ,	a.
Ab. Nigr-o,	â,	o.	Ab. Nigris.		

The following adjectives retain the *e* before *r* in declension: *asper*, rough, *cæter*, the rest, (this word is not used in the masculine singular), *exter*, foreign, *gibber*, crook-backed, *lacer*, torn, *liber*, free, *miser*, wretched, *piger*, slow, *prosper*, prosperous, *tener*, tender, and also all the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as *laniger*, bearing wool, *opifer*, bringing help. *Ibër*, Spanish or Iberian, makes *Ibëra*, *Ibërum*. *Dexter* sometimes retains the *e*, sometimes rejects it: *sinister* always rejects it.

Most other adjectives in *er* reject the *e*, and are declined like *niger*.

The masculine and neuter genders of adjectives of three terminations, are declined like nouns of the second declension; and the feminine gender, like nouns of the first declension.

The following adjectives form the genitive in *ius*, and the dative in *i*.

sol-us,	a,	um,	<i>alone,</i>	} genitive <i>ius</i> , dative <i>i</i> .
tot-us,	a,	um,	<i>the whole,</i>	
ull-us,	a,	um,	<i>any,</i>	
null-us,	a,	um,	<i>none,</i>	
un-us,	a,	um,	<i>one,</i>	

alt-er,	ěra,	ěrum,	<i>the other,</i>	} gen. <i>altĕrius</i> , dat. <i>altĕri</i> . genitive <i>rĭus</i> , dative <i>ri</i> . genitive <i>alius</i> , dative <i>alii</i> .
ut-er,	ra,	rum,	<i>either,</i>	
neut-er,	ra,	rum,	<i>neither,</i>	
ali-us,	a,	ud,	<i>another,</i>	

Unus has no plural, unless it be joined to a noun that has not the singular; as *una littera*, a letter; *una mania*, a wall.

Ambo, *ambæ*, *ambo*, both, and *duo*, *duæ*, *duo*, two, are thus declined:

N. Amb-o,	æ,	o.
G. Amb-orum,	arum,	orum.
D. Amb-ibus,	abus,	ibus.
Ac. Amb-as or o,	as,	o.
V. Amb-o,	æ,	o.
Ab. Amb-ibus,	abus,	ibus.

Adjectives of Two Terminations.

Adjectives of two terminations end in *is*, *e*, or in *er*, *ris*, *re*, and have the first termination masculine and feminine; and the second, neuter. They form the ablative singular in *i*, the genitive plural in *ium*, the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter in *ia*; as

Singular.		Plural.	
^{m. f.}	^{n.}	^{m. f.}	^{n.}
N. Dulcis,	dulce.	N. Dulces,	dulciā.
G. Dulcis,	dulcis.	G. Dulcium,	dulcium.
D. Dulci,	dulci.	D. Dulcibus,	dulcibus.
Ac. Dulcem,	dulce.	Ac. Dulces,	dulcia.
V. Dulcis,	dulce.	V. Dulces,	dulcia.
Ab. Dulci,	dulci.	Ab. Dulcibus,	dulcibus.

The following adjectives *acer*, sharp, *alācer*, brisk, *campester*, belonging to a plain, *celer*, swift, *celeber*, renowned, *equester*, belonging to a horse, *paluster*, marshy, *pedester*, on foot, *saluber*, wholesome, *sylvester*, woody, *volucer*, swift of wing, have *three* terminations in the nominative and vocative singular, but are declined like *dulcis* in all the other cases; as

Singular.			Plural.	
N. Acer,	acris,	acre.	N. Acres,	acriā.
G. Acris.			G. Acrum.	
D. Acri.			D. Acribus.	
Ac. Acrem,		acre.	Ac. Acres,	acria.
V. Acer,	acris,	acre.	V. Acres,	acria.
Ab. Acri.			Ab. Acribus.	

Of these adjectives, the second termination in *is* is frequently masculine as well as feminine.

Comparatives end in *or* and *us*, and make *e* or *i* in the ablative singular, (but *e* preferably to *i*), *um* in the genitive plural, and *a* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural; as

Singular.		Plural.	
N. Melior,	melĭŭs.	N. Meliōres,	meliōra.
G. Meliōris.		G. Meliorum.	
D. Meliori.		D. Melioribus.	
Ac. Meliorem,	melius.	Ac. Meliores,	meliora.
V. Melior,	melius.	V. Meliores,	meliora.
Ab. Melior-e or i.		Ab. Melioribus.	

Adjectives of One Termination.

When there is but one termination it includes all genders. The ablative of adjectives of one termination generally ends in *e* or *i*, the genitive plural in *um*, the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural in *ia*; as

Singular.		Plural.	
N. Felix.		N. Felices,	felicĭā.
G. Felicis.		G. Felicium.	
D. Felici.		D. Felicibus.	
Ac. Felicem,	felix.	Ac. Felices,	felicia.
V. Felix.		V. Felices,	felicia.
Ab. Felic-e or i.		Ab. Felicibus.	

1. Participles used as adjectives make the ablative in *e* or *i*; but only in *e* when used as participles, especially in the ablative absolute.

2. The following adjectives of one termination make *e* only in the ablative, and *um* in the genitive plural; *caelebs*, unmarried, *compos*, master of, *dives*, rich, *hospes*, strange, *impos*, unable, *impūbis*, beardless, *juvĕnis*, young, *pauper*, poor, *pubis*, marriageable, *senex*, old, *sospes*, safe, *superstes*, surviving; also the compounds of *cōlōr*, *corpus*, and *pes*; as *concōlōr*, of the same colour, *trīcorpor*, three-bodied, *trīcuspis*, three-pointed, *trīpes*, three-footed.

Caelebs, *compos*, *impos*, and *superstes*, have sometimes, though rarely, *i* in the ablative.

3. The following make *e* or *i* in the ablative, but only *um* in the genitive plural; *ales*, winged, *compar*, equal, *dispar*, different, *impar*, unequal, *separ*, separate, *consors*, sharing, *inops*, poor, *supplex*, suppliant, *uber*, fertile, *vetus*, old, *vigil*, watchful; and the compounds of *caput*, *capio*, *facio*, *genus*; as *anceps*, *artifex*, *præceps*, *particeps*, *degener*.

Par has *i* only in the ablative, and *um* in the genitive plural, but its compounds, *compar*, *impar*, *dispar*, have *e* or *i*.

Celer, swift, *memor*, mindful, *volucris*, swift-winged, have *i* in the ablative, and *um* in the genitive plural.

4. The following adjectives of one termination in *er*, *es*, *or*, *os*, and *fes*, are seldom used in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter; adjectives in *er*, as *pauper*, *puber*, *celer*, *degener*, *uber*; adjectives in *es*, as *ales*, *dives*, *locuples*, *sospes*, *superstes*, *deses*, *rees*, *hebes*, *terres*, *præpes*; adjectives in *or*, as *memor*, *concolor*, *bicorpor*; those in *os*, as *compos*, *impos*, *exos*; in *fes*, as *artifex*, *carnifex*; also the following, *comis*, *consors*, *exors*, *inops*, *particeps*, *princeps*, *pubis*, *impūbis*, *redux*, *sons*, *insons*, *supplex*, *vigil*, and perhaps some others.

5. *Ultrix* and *victrix*, feminine in the singular, are feminine and neuter in the plural.

Plus is neuter in the singular, and is thus declined :

Sing. N. V. Plus; G. Pluria; D. is wanting; Ac. Plus; Ab. Plure.

Plu. N. V. Plures, plura, and pluria; G. Plurium; D. Pluribus;

Ac. Plures, plura, and pluria; Ab. Pluribus.

Numeral Adjectives.

Numeral adjectives are of several kinds. The *Cardinal* express a number absolutely, and are, as it were, the *hinges* upon which the others rest; as *unus*, one, *duo*, two. The *Ordinal* numbers denote the *order* or *succession* in which any number of persons or things is mentioned; as *Primus*, the first. The *Distributive* denote how many to each; as *terni*, three at a time. The *Multiplicative* signify how many fold; as *triplex*, threefold. The *Proportional* signify how many times more; as *duplo*, by twice as much. The *Adverbial* numerals answer to the question, How many times? as *ter*, three times.

A List of Adjective and Adverbial Numerals.

CARDINAL. <i>One, two, &c.</i>	ORDINAL. <i>First, second, &c.</i>	DISTRIBUTIVE. <i>One by one, &c.</i>	ADVERBIAL. <i>Once, twice, &c.</i>
1 Unus	Primus	Singuli	Semel
2 Duo	Secundus	Binī	Bis
3 Tres	Tertius	Terni	Ter
4 Quatuor	Quartus	Quaterni	Quater
5 Quinque	Quintus	Quini	Quinquies
6 Sex	Sextus	Seni	Sexies
7 Septem	Septimus	Septēni	Septies
8 Octo	Octāvus	Octōni	Octies
9 Novem	Nonus	Novēni	Novies
10 Decem	Decimus	Deni	Decies
11 Undecim	Undecimus	Undēni	Undecies
12 Duodecim	Duodecimus	Duodēni	Duodecies
13 Tredecim	Tertius	Terni	Tredecies
14 Quatuordecim	Quartus	Quaterni	Quatuordecies
15 Quindecim	Quintus	Quini	Quindecies
16 Sexdecim	Sextus	Seni	Sedecies
17 Septendecim	Septimus	Septēni	Decies and septies
18 Octodecim	Octāvus	Octōni	Duodecies
19 Novemdecim	Nonus	Novēni	Undecies
20 Viginti	Vicesimus	Vicēni	Vicies
30 Triginta	Tricesimus	Tricēni	Tricies
40 Quadraginta	Quadragesimus	Quadragēni	Quadrages
50 Quinquaginta	Quinquagesimus	Quinquagēni	Quinquages
60 Sexaginta	Sexagesimus	Sexagēni	Sexages
70 Septuaginta	Septuagesimus	Septuagēni	Septuages
80 Octoginta	Octogesimus	Octogēni	Octoges
90 Nonaginta	Nonagesimus	Nonagēni	Nonages
100 Centum	Centesimus	Centēni	Centies
200 Ducenti	Ducentesimus	Ducentēni	Ducenties
300 Trecenti	Trecentesimus	Trecentēni	Trecenties
400 Quadringenti	Quadragesimesimus	Quadringentēni	Quadringenties
500 Quingenti	Quingentesimus	Quingentēni	Quingenties
600 Sexcenti	Sexcentesimus	Sexcentēni	Sexcenties
700 Septingenti	Septingentesimus	Septingentēni	Septingenties
800 Octingenti	Octingentesimus	Octingentēni	Octingenties
900 Noningenti	Nonagesimus	Nongentēni	Nongenties
1000 Mille	Millesimus	Millēni	Millies

In the combination of cardinal numbers, from twenty to one hundred, the smaller with *et*, or the larger without *et*, precedes; as *quatuor et viginti*, or *viginti quatuor*. Above one hundred the larger number precedes, with or without *et*; as *centum et unus*, or *centum unus*.

Unde and *duode* are joined to most even numbers increasing by tens, to express one or two less; as *undeviginti* for 19; *duodetriginta* for 28.

Comparison of Adjectives.

There are *two* degrees of comparison; the *comparative* and the *superlative*.

The *Positive* state expresses the *simple* quality; as *durus*, hard; *brevis*, short.

The *Comparative* degree expresses a higher or lower degree of the quality than the positive; as *durior*, harder; *brevior*, shorter.

The Comparative is formed from the first case of the positive that ends in *i*, by adding *or* for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter; as

<i>Durus</i> ,	G.	<i>duri</i> ,	Comparative,	<i>durior</i> ,	<i>durius</i> .
<i>Brevis</i> ,	D.	<i>brevi</i> ,	Comparative,	<i>brevior</i> ,	<i>brevius</i> .

The *Superlative* expresses the *highest* or *lowest* degree of the quality; as *durissimus*, hardest; *brevissimus*, the shortest.

The Superlative is formed from the first case of the positive that ends in *i*, by adding *ssimus*, *a*, *um*; as

Gen.	<i>Duri</i> ,	Superlative,	<i>duri-ssimus</i> ,	<i>a</i> ,	<i>um</i> ,	hardest.
Dat.	<i>Brevi</i> ,	Superlative,	<i>brevi-ssimus</i> ,	<i>a</i> ,	<i>um</i> ,	shortest.

The following are exceptions from this rule:

1. Adjectives in *er*, form the comparative in the regular manner, but the superlative by adding *rĭmus* to the nominative; as *pulcher*, fair, *pulchri-or*, fairer, *pulcher-rĭmus*, fairest.

2. Adjectives in *lis* form the comparative and superlative in the regular manner, except the following, which make the superlative in *lĭmus*, *a*, *um*;

<i>Agĭlis</i> ,	nimble,	<i>agillĭmus</i> .	<i>Gracĭlis</i> ,	slender,	<i>gracillĭmus</i> .
<i>Difficĭlis</i> ,	difficult,	<i>difficillĭmus</i> .	<i>Humĭlis</i> ,	low,	<i>humillĭmus</i> .
<i>Dissimĭlis</i> ,	unlike,	<i>dissimillĭmus</i> .	<i>Imbecĭllis</i> ,	weak,	{ <i>imbecillĭmus</i> . <i>imbecillissĭmus</i> .
<i>Facĭlis</i> ,	easy,	<i>facillĭmus</i> .	<i>Simĭlis</i> ,	like,	<i>simillĭmus</i> .

3. Adjectives in *dĭcus*, *fĭcus*, *lŏquus*, and *vŏlus*, form the comparative in *entior*, and the superlative in *entissĭmus*; as *maledĭcus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissĭmus*. But *beneficissĭmus*, from *benefĭcus*, and *mirificissĭmus*, from *mirificus*, are also found in ancient writers.

4. The following adjectives are regular in the comparative, but irregular in the superlative;—

Citer, <i>near</i> ,	citerior,	citissimus.
Dexter, <i>right</i> ,	dexterior,	dextissimus.
Exter, <i>outward</i> ,	exterior,	extrēmus, extissimus.
Infērus, <i>low</i> ,	inferior,	infimus or imus.
Intērus, <i>inward</i> ,	interior,	intimus.
Matūrus, <i>ripe</i> ,	maturior,	maturrimus, maturissimus.
Postērus, <i>behind</i> ,	posterior,	postremus, postissimus.
Sinister, <i>left</i> ,	sinisterior,	sinistissimus.
Supērus, <i>high</i> ,	superior,	supremus, summus.
Vetus, <i>old</i> ,	veterior,	veterrimus.

5. The following are compared irregularly;—

Bonus, <i>good</i> ,	melior, <i>better</i> ,	optimus, <i>best</i> .
Dives, <i>rich</i> ,	ditior, <i>richer</i> ,	ditissimus, <i>richest</i> .
Magnus, <i>great</i> ,	major, <i>greater</i> ,	maximus, <i>greatest</i> .
Malus, <i>bad</i> ,	pejor, <i>worse</i> ,	pessimus, <i>worst</i> .
Multus, <i>much</i> ,	plus, <i>more</i> ,	plurimus, <i>most</i> .
Nequam, <i>wicked</i> ,	nequior, <i>more wicked</i> ,	nequissimus, <i>most wicked</i> .
Parvus, <i>little</i> ,	minor, <i>less</i> ,	minimus, <i>least</i> .

6. The following are compared by *magis* and *maximè*;—
Adjectives in *us* pure, that is, in *us* with a vowel before it; as *arduus*, difficult, *magis arduus*, more difficult, *maximè arduus*, most difficult. But adjectives ending in *quus*, and also these words—*assiduus*, *exiguus*, *strenuus*, are formed in the regular manner; as *antiquus*, *antiquior*, *antiquissimus*.

Adjectives defective in Comparison.

7. The following adjectives have no *positive*;—

Deterior, <i>worse</i> , deterrimus.	Propior, <i>nearer</i> , proximus, from prope.
Ociior, <i>swifter</i> , ocissimus.	Ultior, <i>farther</i> , ultimus, from ultra.
Prior, <i>former</i> , primus, from prae.	

8. The following have no *comparative*;—

Bellus, <i>spruce</i> , bellissimus.	Novus, <i>new</i> , novissimus.
Diversus, <i>different</i> , diversissimus.	Nuper, <i>late</i> , nuperimus.
Fidus, <i>faithful</i> , fidissimus.	Par, <i>equal</i> , parissimus.
Inclutus, <i>renowned</i> , inclytissimus.	Persuansus, <i>persuaded</i> , persuasissimus.
Invincitus, <i>invincible</i> , invictissimus.	Sacer, <i>holy</i> , sacerrimus.
Involitus, <i>unwilling</i> , invitissimus.	Vetus, <i>old</i> , veterrimus.
Meritus, <i>deserving</i> , meritissimus.	

9. The following want the *superlative*;—

Adolescens, <i>young</i> , adolescentior.	Longinquus, <i>distant</i> , longinquior.
Arcanus, <i>secret</i> , arcanior.	Optimus, <i>rich</i> , optimior.
Cæcus, <i>blind</i> , cæcior.	Proclivis, <i>down-hill</i> , proclivior.
Declivis, <i>downward</i> , declivior.	Pronus, <i>inclined downwards</i> , pronior.
Diuturnus, <i>lasting</i> , dinturnior.	Propinquus, <i>near</i> , propinquior.
Deceus, <i>idle</i> , desidior.	Salutaris, <i>wholesome</i> , salutarior.
Docilis, <i>teachable</i> , docillior.	Satur, <i>full</i> , saturior.
Ingens, <i>great</i> , ingentior.	Senex, <i>old</i> , senior.
Juvenis, <i>young</i> , janior.	

Likewise adjectives ending in *alis*, *ilis*, and *bilis*, have no superlative; as *regalis*, *civilis*, *sebilis*.

10. These have only a comparative: *anterior*, former, *satior*, better, *sequior*, worse.

11. Many adjectives admit of no comparison; as

1. Adjectives whose signification cannot be increased or diminished; Participles in *rus* and *dus*, and adjectives ending in *bundus*, *lous*, *imus*, *inus*, *ious*, *orus*, *ster*, and *plex*; as *amaturus*, *amandus*, *vagabundus*, *modicus*, *legitimus*, *matutinus*, *fugitivus*, *canorus*, *campester*, *supplex*. *Simplex* has both a comparative and superlative.

Tempestivus has a comparative, and *festivus* both degrees.

2. Adjectives compounded of nouns and verbs; as *versicolor*, *degener*;—the compounds of *fero* and *gero*; as *frugifer*, *corniger*; of *animus*, *jugum*, *somnus*, *arma*; as *magnanimus*, *bijugis*, *insomnis*, *inermis*; of *pro* and *per*; as *prædictus*, *perdoctus*, except *præstans*, *præclarus*.

3. Diminutives, which, in themselves, involve a sort of comparison; as *parvulus*, very small. Possessives; as *paternus*, *maternalis*. Gentile adjectives; as *Romanus*, *Pænus*. Many other adjectives are not compared; as *albus*, *almus*, *apricus*, *cicur*, *canorus*, *canus*, *claudus*, *crispus*, *dispar*, *jejunus*, *memor*, *mirus*, *mutus*, *mutulus*, *nefastus*, *precos*, *sepes*.

OF PRONOUNS.

A *Pronoun* is a word used instead of a noun, to avoid the too frequent repetition of the same word; as "When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, *he* turned *his* arms against *his* country."

Pronouns are generally divided into

1. <i>Personal.</i>	iste, <i>that.</i>	vester, <i>your.</i>
Ego, <i>I.</i>	is, <i>he.</i>	4. <i>Gentile or Patrial.</i>
tu, <i>thou.</i>	idem, <i>the same.</i>	nostras, <i>of our country.</i>
sui, <i>of himself.</i>		vestras, <i>of your country.</i>
	3. <i>Possessive.</i>	cujas, <i>of what country?</i>
2. <i>Demonstrative.</i>	meus, <i>my.</i>	5. <i>Relative.</i>
hic, <i>this.</i>	tuus, <i>thy.</i>	qui, <i>who.</i>
ille, <i>he.</i>	suus, <i>his.</i>	quis, <i>who?</i>
ipse, <i>himself.</i>	noster, <i>our.</i>	cujus, <i>whose?</i>

Ego, *tu*, *sui*, are used for substantives, the rest are properly adjectives.

Four only have a vocative,—*tu*, *meus*, *noster*, *nostras*.

Hic, *ille*, *ipse*, *idem*, *aliquis*, *quicumque*, *quilibet*, *quisque*, are, in some instances, found in the vocative.

Pronouns have *two* numbers like nouns, and *three* persons in each number, namely,

Singular.

Ego, *I*, the person speaking, is the first person.

Tu, *thou*, the person spoken to, is the second person.

Ille, *illa*, *illud*, the person or thing spoken of, is the third person.

Plural.

Nos, we, is the first person.

Vos, ye or you, is the second person.

Illi, they, is the third person.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

Singular.

N. Ego, *I*.
G. Mēi, *of me*.
D. Mihi, *to me*.
Ac. Me, *me*.
V. wanting.
Ab. Me, *from or by me*.

Plural.

N. Nos, *we*.
G. Nostrūm, vel-ī, *of us*.
D. Nobis, *to us*.
Ac. Nos, *us*.
V. wanting.
Ab. Nobis, *from or by us*.

Nostrūm and *vestrūm* are contractions for *nostrorum*, *nostrorum*, and *vestrorum*, *vestrorum*.

Vestri and *nostrī* signify *belonging to or towards*; *nostrūm* and *vestrūm* mean *amongst us*; as *quis nostrum*, which of us?

Singular.

N. Tu, *thou*.
G. Tui, *of thee*.
D. Tibi, *to thee*.
Ac. Te, *thee*.
V. O! Tu, *O thou!*
Ab. Te, *with thee*.

Plural.

N. Vos, *you*.
G. Vestrūm or -ī, *of you*.
D. Vobis, *to you*.
Ac. Vos, *you*.
V. O! Vos, *O you!*
Ab. Vobis, *with you*.

Sui, of himself, herself, itself, themselves, has no nominative or vocative case, and is thus declined:

Singular and Plural.

G. Sui, <i>of himself</i> .	} <i>herself, itself, themselves.</i>
D. Sibi, <i>to himself</i> .	
Ac. Se, <i>himself</i> .	
Ab. Se, <i>by himself</i> .	

To the cases of these three pronouns, (except the genitive plural) *met* may be added to express the English *self*; as *egomet*, I myself, *mihimet*, to myself, *temet*, *semet*, with or without *ipse*; *mihimet ipsi*. *Tute* is used for *tumet*. *Se* admits a reduplication; as *sece*. *Cum*, with, is affixed to the ablatives, *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quocum*, *quicum*, and *quibuscum*.

Singular.

^{m.}	^{f.}	^{n.}
N. Hic,	hæc,	hoc.
G. Hujus.		
D. Huic.		
Ac. Hunc,	hanc,	hoc.
V. wanting.		
Ab. Hoc,	hæc,	hoc.

Plural.

^{m.}	^{f.}	^{n.}
N. Hi,	hæc,	hæc.
G. Hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum.
D. His.		
Ac. Hos,	has,	hæc.
V. wanting.		
Ab. His.		

The force of the demonstrative *hic*, is strengthened by the affixes *ce* and *cine*; as *hicece*, *hæccece*, *hocco*; *hiccine*, *hæccine*, *hoccine*. Of the former, those cases only are in common use which end in *c* or *s* before *ce*: and of the latter, only the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular are in use; and the neuter plural, *hæccine*, which is rare. Of *istic* and *illic*, declined *istic*, *istac*, *istoc* (or *istuc*;) *illic*, *illac*, *illoc* (or *illuc*;) only those cases which end in *c*, namely, the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular are in use; and the neuter plural *istac*, (or *isthac*;) and *illac*.

Ille, he, and *iste*, that, are thus declined:

Singular.			Plural.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
N. Ille,	illa,	illud.	N. Illi,	illæ,	illa.
G. Illius.			G. Illorum,	illarum,	illorum.
D. Illi.			D. Illis.		
Ac. Illum,	illam,	illud.	Ac. Illos,	illas,	illa.
V. rarely used.			V. rarely used.		
Ab. Illo,	illâ,	illo.	Ab. Illis.		

For *illi* and *illis*, we sometimes read *olli* and *ollis*.

In the same manner is declined *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, except that the nominative and accusative cases singular, make *ipsum* in the neuter gender.

Singular.			Plural.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
N. Is,	ëä,	id.	N. Ii,	eæ,	ëä.
G. Ejus.			G. Eorum,	earum,	eorum.
D. Ei.			D. Iis or eis.		
Ac. Eum,	eam,	id.	Ac. Eos,	eas,	ea.
V. is wanting.			V. is wanting.		
Ab. Eo,	eâ,	eo.	Ab. Iis or eis.		

Idem, *eâdem*, *idem*, the same, is a compound of *is*, *ea*, *id*, and is thus declined:

Singular.			Plural.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
N. Idem,	ëâdem,	idem.	N. Iidem,	eâdem,	ëâdem.
G. Ejusdem.			G. Eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem.
D. Eidem.			D. Iisdem or eisdem.		
Ac. Eundem,	eandem,	idem.	Ac. Eosdem,	easdem,	eâdem.
V. wanting.			V. wanting.		
Ab. Eodem,	eâdem,	eodem.	Ab. Iisdem or eisdem.		

Meus, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, are declined like *durus*; but *meus*, in the vocative, makes *mi*, *mea*, *meum*.

Cujus, *cuja*, *cujum*, whose, is used only in the nominative and accusative singular.

Cujæ, ablative singular, and *cujæ*, nominative plural, are found only among old writers.

Nostras, *vestras*, and *cujas* are declined, nominative *nostras*, genitive *nostrātis*, like *felix*.

To the ablatives *suo* and *sui*, *ptis* is affixed to denote *own*; as *Suapte manu*, with his own hand.

Singular.			Plural.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
N. Qui,	quæ,	quod.	N. Qui,	quæ,	quæ.
G. Cujus.			G. Quorum, quarum, quorum		
D. Cui.			D. Quibus or queis.		
Ac. Quem,	quam,	quod.	Ac. Quos,	quas,	quæ.
V. wanting.			V. wanting.		
Ab. Quo, quâ,	quo or quî.		Ab. Quibus or queis.		

Qui is of all genders.

Quis, *quæ*, *quid*, is declined like *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*; but such of its compounds as *end* in *quis*, have *qua* in the feminine singular and neuter plural; while those which only *begin* with *quis*, as *quisnam*, have *quæ* and not *qua*.

In *quidam* and *quisquam*, the *m* is changed into *n* before *d* and *q*; as in the accusative *quendam*, *quenquam*.

Compounds of *qui* and *quis*.

Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	
N. Quidam,	quædam,	quoddam or quiddam.	G. Cujusdam.
N. Quivis,	quævis,	quodvis or quidvis.	G. Cujusvis.
N. Quicunque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque.	G. Cujuscunque.
N. Quilibet,	quælibet,	quodlibet or quidlibet.	G. Cujuslibet.
N. Aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquid or aliquid.	G. Aliquis.
N. Ecquis,	ecqua,	ecquid.	G. Ecuquis.
N. Quisnam,	quænam,	quidnam or quodnam.	G. Cujusnam.
N. Quisquis,	no feminine,	quidquid or quicquid.	G. Cujusquis.
N. Quisque,	quæque,	quodque or quidque.	G. Cujusque.
N. Quisquam,	quæquam,	quidquam or quicquam.	G. Cujusquam.
N. Quispiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam, quidpiam, } or quippiam. }	G. Cujuspiam.
N. Unusquisque.	unusquæque,	unumquodque or unumquidque. }	G. Uniuscujusque.

The compounds of *qui*, namely, *quidam*, *quivis*, *quicunque*, *quilibet*, have generally *quibus*, and not *queis* in the dative and ablative plural.

OF VERBS.

A *Verb* is a word which expresses the *state*, *action*, or *suffering*, of some person or thing; as *I am*, *I teach*, *I am taught*. It is also used to *command*, *exhort*, *request*, or *ask a question*; as "*Be silent*;" "*Study diligently*;" "*Lend me the book*;" "*Have you written the letter*?"

Verbs have *two* Voices, the *Active*, which ends in *o*, and the *Passive*, which ends in *or*.

An *Active transitive* verb ends in *o*, and expresses action passing from an *agent* or *actor* to some *object*; as "*Preceptor me docet,*" the master *teaches* me.

A *Passive* verb ends in *or*, and generally implies that the nominative is the *object* of an action done by some agent, expressed or understood; as "*Johannes a preceptore docetur,*" John *is taught* by the master."

An *Intransitive** or *Neuter* verb expresses either action *confined* to the subject, or neither action nor suffering, but simply *being* or a *state* of being; as *Curro*, I run; *Sum*, I am.

A *Deponent* verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or a neuter signification; as *Loquor*, I speak; *Glorior*, I boast.

A *Deponent* verb is so called, because it has deposed, or laid aside the passive sense.

A *Defective* verb is one that is used only in some of the moods and tenses.

An *Impersonal* verb merely asserts the existence of some action or state, without reference to any particular subject or person. It is used only in the third person singular.

Neuter-passives are so called from having a passive perfect tense; as *Audeo*, *aumus sum*, to dare.

Frequentatives express the *repetition* of the act or state denoted by the primitive, and end in *ito*; as *Clamito*, I cry frequently, from *clamo*, I cry.

Inceptives express the *beginning* of an act or state, and end in *eco*; as *Calesco*, I grow warm, from *caleo*, I am warm.

Desideratives end in *urio*, and express *desire*; as *Eurio*, I desire to eat, I hunger.

Diminutives end in *illo*, and denote a *trifling*, *insignificant* action; as *Cantillo*, I hum, from *cantare*.

The properties of Verbs are—Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

Of Moods.

The *Mood* of a verb is the particular *form* which it assumes, in order to express the *manner* in which the being, action, or passion, is represented.

There are generally reckoned *five* moods; the *Indicative*,

* In compliance with the general custom of Latin grammarians, I have considered the terms *intransitive* and *neuter* as synonymous, but there is evidently a distinction, as *intransitive* verbs imply *action*, though *confined* to their subjects; but *neuter* verbs imply *no* action whatever.

the *Imperative*, the *Potential*, the *Subjunctive*, and the *Infinitive*.

1. The *Indicative Mood* simply indicates, or declares positively, respecting an action or event; as *Ille docet*, he teaches; or it asks a question; as *Docet ille?* does he teach?

2. The *Imperative Mood* commands, exhorts, entreats, or permits; as *Íte*, go; *Studete*, study; *Parce mihi*, spare me; *Eamus*, let us go.

3. The *Potential Mood* implies possibility or liberty, power, will or duty, to do or suffer an action; and is known by the signs—*may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*; as *Amem*, I may love, &c.

4. The *Subjunctive Mood* has the same terminations as the *Potential*, but generally the signification of the *Indicative*. It is *subjoined* to another verb in the same sentence, with which it is connected by some conjunction or indefinite word, expressed or understood; as "*Eram miser cùm amārem*, I was miserable when I loved."

5. The *Infinitive Mood* expresses a thing in a general and unlimited manner, and has neither number, person, nor nominative case, but is generally known by the sign *to*; as *Audire*, to hear.

Tense, Numbers, and Persons.

Tense is a term used to distinguish the *time* of a verb.

There are *six* tenses; the *Present*, the *Imperfect*, the *Perfect*, the *Pluperfect*,* the *Future Imperfect*, and the *Future Perfect*.

1. The *Present tense* speaks of an action or event which takes place in present time; as *Doceo*, I teach, am teaching, or do teach.

2. The *Imperfect tense* represents an action or event which *was going on* and not completed, at some past time; as *Docebam*, I was teaching.

This tense is generally used to express actions frequently repeated, also manners, customs, and institutions formerly existing; as "*Anseres Romæ publicè alebantur* in Capitolio, Geese were kept at the public expense at Rome in the Capitol."

In writing letters, the Romans sometimes used the imperfect tense to denote what was going on at the time when they wrote; as "*Novi nihil erat apud nos*, there is no news with us."†

* Or rather the *past perfect* instead of *pluperfect*.

† Zumpt's Grammar.

3. The *Perfect tense* represents an action or event either as just finished, or as finished some time ago; as *Docuī*, I have taught, or I taught.

4. The *Pluperfect* expresses an action or event which was past before some other past action or event specified in the sentence, and to which it refers; as *Docuēram*, I had taught.

5. The *Future Imperfect* represents an action or event which is yet to come; as *Docēbo*, I shall or will teach.

6. The *Future Perfect* denotes that a future action or event will be completed at, or before another future action or event; as *Docuero*, I shall have taught.

Verbs have *two* numbers, the *singular* and the *plural*, agreeing with a noun or pronoun expressed or understood.

In each number there are *three* persons; as

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>First Pers.</i>	Ego amo, <i>I love.</i>	Nos amāmus, <i>we love.</i>	
<i>Second Pers.</i>	Tu amas, <i>thou lovest.</i>	Vos amātis, <i>you or ye love.</i>	
<i>Third Pers.</i>	Ille amat, <i>he, she, or it loves.</i>	Illi amant, <i>they love.</i>	

Nouns that are spoken *of* are of the third person, and nouns spoken *to* are of the second.

Gerunds, Supines, and Participles.

Gerunds and *Supines* are a kind of verbal nouns.

The active voice has three gerunds, ending in *dī*, *dō*, *dum*; as *amandī*, of loving; *amandō*, in loving; *amandum*, to love.

The Gerunds are considered as the cases of a Verbal Substantive of the Second declension, Neuter gender, having no plural nor vocative singular. The Gerund in *dī* is considered as the genitive case, the Gerund in *dō*, as the dative or ablative, and the Gerund in *dum*, as the nominative or accusative.

Each voice has a supine; the Active ends in *um*; as *amātum*, to love; the Passive ends in *u*; as *amātu*, to be loved.

Supines are Verbal Substantives of the Fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases singular. The supine in *um* is the accusative, and that in *u* the ablative.

A *Participle* is derived from a verb, and while it signifies *being, doing, or suffering*, like a verb, it has gender, number, and case, like an adjective.

Each voice has two participles; the Active has a *present* and *future*; the Passive has a *perfect* and *future*.

1. The Active *Present* ends in *ans* or *ens*, and shews that the action is *going on*; as *amans*, loving; *docens*, teaching.

2. The Active *Future* ends in *rus*, and signifies a *likelihood* or *design* of doing a thing; as *amatūrus*, to love, or about to love.

1. The Passive *Perfect*, (or *Present**); as *amātus*, being loved, or having been loved.

2. The Passive *Future* ends in *dus*, and signifies the *necessity*, *possibility*, or *certainty* of something to be done; as *amandus*, to be loved.

The *Present Active Participle* is declined like *felix*, all the other participles like *durus*.

Active and *Neuter Participles* have, in Latin, no *perfect* tense; consequently, we cannot express literally the English *perfect* participle, *having loved*, &c.; we must use a conjunction and the pluperfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connexion with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved, *quum amavisset*, &c. "The master *having loved* books" is translated thus, "*Libris amātis a magistro*, Books *being loved*, or *having been loved* by the master."

Verbs Deponent, however, have a *perfect* participle with an *active* signification; as *locūtus*, having spoken.

CONJUGATION.

Conjugation signifies a *joining together*, and denotes the regular arrangement of a verb in all its variations of mood, tense, number, and person.

The *principal parts* of a verb, from which the other tenses may be obtained, are *four*; the *present*, *perfect*, *supine*, and *infinitive*.

The first person of the Present of the Indicative is called the *Theme* or *Root* of the verb, because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the same, are called *radical* letters; as *am*, in *amo*. The rest are called the *termination*; as *ādāmus*, in *amādāmus*. All the letters which come before *āre*, *ēre*, *ēre*, or *īre*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting the radical letters before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

* Zumpt denies a present signification to this participle, while Scheller, (vol. i. p. 165, Walker's trans.) allows it.

THE VERB SUM.

The verb *Sum*, I am, is irregular, and is thus conjugated;—

The Principal Parts—*Sum*, *fui*, — *esse*, to *be*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

- S. **Sum*, I am.
Es, thou art.
Est, he is.
P. *Sūmus*, we are.
Estis, you are.
Sunt, they are.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

- S. *Ēram*, I was.
Eras, thou wast.
Erat, he was.
P. *Erāmus*, we were.
Erātis, you were.
Erant, they were.

FUTURE IMPERF. TENSE.

- S. *Ēro*, I shall or will be.
Eris, thou shalt or wilt be.
Erit, he shall or will be.
P. *Erīmus*, we shall or will be.
Erītis, you shall or will be.
Erunt, they shall or will be.

PERFECT TENSE.

- S. *Fui*, I have been.
Fuisti, thou hast been.
Fuit, he has been.
P. *Fuīmus*, we have been.
Fuistis, you have been.
Fuērunt vel fuēre, they have been.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

- S. *Füeram*, I had been.
Fueras, thou hadst been.
Fuerat, he had been.
P. *Fuerāmus*, we had been.
Fuerātis, you had been.
Fuerant, they had been.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

- S. *Füero*, I shall have been.
Fueris, thou wilt have been.
Fuerit, he will have been.
P. *Fuerīmus*, we shall have been.
Fuerītis, you will have been.
Fuerint, they will have been.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| S. <i>Es</i> , esto, be thou. | P. <i>Este</i> , Estōte, be you. |
| <i>Esto</i> , be he, or let him be. | <i>Sunto</i> , be they, or let them be. |

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—may, can, should.

- | | |
|---|--|
| S. <i>Sim</i> ,† I may, can, &c. be. | P. <i>Sīmus</i> , we may, can, &c. be. |
| <i>Sis</i> , thou mayst, canst, &c. be. | <i>Sītis</i> , you may, can, &c. be. |
| <i>Sit</i> , he may, can, &c. be. | <i>Sint</i> , they may, can, &c. be. |

* It may sometimes be serviceable for the learner to prefix the pronouns to the verbs; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus*, we are; *vos estis*, you are; *illi sunt*, they are.

† *Sim* is also used as an imperative for *let me be*, and *sīmus*, for *let us be*.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

- S. Essem *vel* forem, *I might, could, would, or should be.*
 Esses *vel* fores, *thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst be.*
 Esset *vel* foret, *he might, could, would, or should be.*
 P. Essēmus *vel* forēmus, *we might, could, would, or should be.*
 Essetis *vel* forētis, *you might, could, would, or should be.*
 Essent *vel* forent, *they might, could, would, or should be.*

PERFECT TENSE.

- Sing. Fūërim, *I may have been.*
 Fueris, *thou mayst have been.*
 Fuerit, *he may have been.*
 Plur. Fuerīmus, *we may have been.*
 Fuerītis, *you may have been.*
 Fuërint, *they may have been.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

- S. Fuissem, *I might, could, would, or should have been.*
 Fuisses, *thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have been.*
 Fuisset, *he might, could, would, or should have been.*
 P. Fuissēmus, *we might, could, would, or should have been.*
 Fuissētis, *you might, could, would, or should have been.*
 Fuissent, *they might, could, would, or should have been.*

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated in the same manner as the Potential, but the signification varies according to the conjunction prefixed; as

PRESENT TENSE.
 Si Sim, *if I be, or should be.*
 Cūm Sim, *since I am.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.
 Si Essem *vel* forem, *if I were, or might, could, would, or should be.*
 Cūm Essem, *since I was.*

PERFECT TENSE.
 Si Fuërim, *if I were, or have been.*
 Cūm Fuërim, *since I was.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.
 Si Fuissem, *if I had been, or might, &c. have been.*
 Cūm Fuissem, *since I had been.*

Instead of a Subjunctive Future, the participle *futurus* is used with *sim*; as "Si *futurus sim.*" If I may be about to be.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.
 Esse, *to be.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.
 Fore *vel* futūrum esse, *to be about to be.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.
 Fuisse, *to have been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.
 Futūrum fuisse, *to have been about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.—Futūrus, a, um, *about to be.*

The Conjugation of Regular Verbs.

There are four Conjugations of Verbs, distinguished by the vowel before *re* in the Infinitive Mood.

The First Conjugation makes *āre* long; as *amāre*.

The Second Conjugation makes *ēre* long; as *monēre*.

The Third Conjugation makes *ere* short; as *regere*.

The Fourth Conjugation makes *īre* long; as *audire*.

Formation of the Tenses in the Active Voice.

INDICATIVE.

The *Imperfect* is formed from the Present by changing *o*, in the 1st conjugation into *abam*, in the 2nd into *bam*, in the 3rd and 4th into *ebam*.

The *Future imperfect* is formed from the Present by changing *o*, in the 1st conjugation into *abo*, in the 2nd into *bo*, in the 3rd and 4th into *am*.

The *Pluperfect* is formed from the Perfect by changing *i* into *eram*.

The *Future perfect* is formed from the Perfect by changing *i* into *ero*.

IMPERATIVE.

The *Present* is formed from the Present Infinitive by taking away *re*.*

POTENTIAL.

The *Present* is formed from the Present Indicative by changing *o*, in the 1st conjugation into *em*, in the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th into *am*.

The *Imperfect* is formed from the Present Infinitive by adding *m*.

The *Perfect* is formed from the Perfect Indicative by changing *i* into *erim*.

The *Pluperfect* is formed from the Perfect Indicative by changing *i* into *issem*.

INFINITIVE.

The *Present* is formed from the Present Indicative by changing *o*, in the 1st conjugation into *āre*, in the 2nd and 4th into *re*, in the 3rd by changing *o* or *io* into *ere*.

* Except *dico*, *duco*, and *facio*, which make *dic*, *duc*, *fac*.

The *Future imperfect* is formed from the Supine by changing *m* into *rum*, and adding *esse*.

The *Perfect* is formed from the Perfect Indicative by changing *i* into *isse*.

The *Future perfect* is formed from the Supine by changing *m* into *rum*, and adding *fuisse*.

The *Gerunds* are formed from the Participle Present by changing *s* into *di*, *do*, and *dum*.

The *Participle present* is formed from the Present Indicative by changing *o*,—in the 1st Conjugation into *ans*,—in the 2nd into *ns*,—in the 3rd and 4th into *ens*.

The *Participle future* is formed from the Supine by changing *m* into *rus*.

A Tabular View of the Formation of the Tenses.

1. FROM THE PRESENT.					
Pres.	Indicative.		Potential.	Participle.	Gerunds.
	Imp.	Fut. Imp.	Pres.	Pres.	
1. Am-o.	ābam.	ābo.	em.	ans.	andi.
2. Mone-o.	bam.	bo.	am.	ns.	ndi.
3. Reg-o.	ēbam.	am.	am.	ens.	endi.
4. Audi-o.	ēbam.	am.	am.	ens.	endi.
2. FROM THE PERFECT.					
	Pluper.	Fut. Perf.	Perf.	Pluperf.	Infín.
1. Amav-i.	eram.	ero.	erim.	issem.	issee.
2. Monu-i.	eram.	ero.	erim.	issem.	issee.
3. Rex-i.	eram.	ero.	erim.	issem.	issee.
4. Audiv-i.	eram.	ero.	erim.	issem.	issee.
3. FROM THE SUPINE.					
Supine.	Fut. Imp. Infín.		Fut. Perf. Infín.	Fut. Part.	
1. Amatu-m.	rum esse.		rum fuisse.	rus.	
2. Monitu-m.	rum esse.		rum fuisse.	rus.	
3. Rectu-m.	rum esse.		rum fuisse.	rus.	
4. Auditu-m.	rum esse.		rum fuisse.	rus.	
4. FROM THE PRESENT INFINITIVE.					
Pres. Infín.	Pres. Imper.		Imperf. Poten.		
1. Amāre.	ama.		amārem.		
2. Monēre.	mone.		monērem.		
3. Regēre.	rege.		regērem.		
4. Audire.	audi.		audīrem.		

ACTIVE VOICE.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts—Amo, amāvi, amātum, amāre, to love.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—am, do.

- Sing. Am-o, *I love, am loving, or do love.*
 Am-as, *thou lovest, art loving, or dost love.*
 Am-at, *he loves, is loving, or does love.*
 Plur. Am-āmus, *we love, are loving, or do love.*
 Am-ātis, *you love, are loving, or do love.*
 Am-ant, *they love, are loving, or do love.*

IMPERFECT TENSE,—*was*.

- Sing. Am-ābam, *I was loving.*
 Am-ābas, *thou wast loving.*
 Am-ābat, *he was loving.*
 Plur. Am-ābāmus, *we were loving.*
 Am-ābātis, *you were loving.*
 Am-ābant, *they were loving.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE,—*shall, will*.

- Sing. Am-ābo, *I shall or will love.*
 Am-ābis, *thou shalt or wilt love.*
 Am-ābit, *he shall or will love.*
 Plur. Am-ābīmus, *we shall or will love.*
 Am-ābītis, *you shall or will love.*
 Am-ābunt, *they shall or will love.*

This tense denotes *promising* as well as *futurity*, as in the following instances:—
 “Pasce aliquid nullam patiere repulsam,”—(Ovid’s Met. Lib. 2.)—Ask what thou wilt, thou *shalt* suffer no refusal. “Post mihi non simili penā commissa luetis,”—(Virg. Æn. Lib. 1. 136.)—Afterwards ye *shall* atone for, &c.

PERFECT TENSE,—*have, did*.

- Sing. Amāv-i, *I loved, or have loved.*
 Amāv-isti, *thou lovedst, or hast loved.*
 Amāv-it, *he loved, or has loved.*
 Plur. Amāv-īmus, *we loved, or have loved.*
 Amāv-istis, *you loved, or have loved.*
 Amāv-ērunt *vel* amāv-ēre, *they loved, or have loved.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*had*.

- Sing. Amāv-eram, *I had loved.*
 Amāv-eras, *thou hadst loved.*
 Amāv-erat, *he had loved.*
 Plur. Amāv-erāmus, *we had loved.*
 Amāv-eratis, *you had loved.*
 Amāv-erant, *they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will have*.

- Sing. Amāv-ēro, *I shall have loved.*
 Amāv-eris, *thou wilt have loved.*
 Amāv-erit, *he will have loved.*
 Plur. Amāv-ērīmus, *we shall have loved.*
 Amāv-ērītis, *you will have loved.*
 Amāv-erint, *they will have loved.*

This tense is used to denote the *completion* of a future action or event, and not *determination*. Without conjunctions or adverbs, the sign of the first person is *shall have*, of the rest, *will have*; but with conjunctions, &c. the sign is either *shall have* or *have*, with the verb.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

- Sing. Ama, am-āto, *love thou.*
 Am-āto, *love he, or let him love.*
 Plur. Am-āte, am-atōte, *love you or ye.*
 Am-ānto, *love they, or let them love.*

This mood has no *first* person singular or plural, the first persons of the *potential* present are used instead; thus, let us love, *amēmus*. The *third* persons also of the *Potential Present* are sometimes used imperatively; as "Neu te dexterioꝛ tortum declinet in Anguem."—(Ovid's Met. Lib. 2. Fab. 1.)

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*may, can, should.*

- Sing. Am-em, *I may, can, or should love.*
 Am-es, *thou mayst, canst, or shouldst love.*
 Am-et, *he may, can, or should love.*
 Plur. Am-ēmus, *we may, can, or should love.*
 Am-ētis, *you may, can, or should love.*
 Am-ent, *they may, can, or should love.*

IMPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, should.*

- Sing. Am-ārem, *I might, could, would, or should love.*
 Am-āres, *thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst love.*
 Am-āret, *he might, could, would, or should love.*
 Plur. Am-ārēmus, *we might, could, would, or should love.*
 Am-ārētis, *you might, could, would, or should love.*
 Am-ārent, *they might, could, would, or should love.*

PERFECT TENSE,—*may have.*

- Sing. Amāv-ērim, *I may have loved.*
 Amāv-ēris, *thou mayst have loved.*
 Amāv-ērit, *he may have loved.*
 Plur. Amāv-ērīmus, *we may have loved.*
 Amāv-ērītis, *you may have loved.*
 Amāv-ērint, *they may have loved.*

The sign *can* is not used in the Perfect Tense.

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, should have.*

- S. Amāv-isse, *I might, could, would, or should have loved.*
 Amav-isses, *thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have loved.*
 Amav-isset, *he might, could, would, or should have loved.*
 P. Amav-issēmus, *we might, could, would, or should have loved.*
 Amav-issetis, *you might, could, would, or should have loved.*
 Amav-issent, *they might, could, would, or should have loved.*

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the Conjunction prefixed.

PRESENT TENSE.
Si Amem, *if I love, or should love.*
Cum Amem, *since, or when I love.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.
Si Amarem, *if I loved, or should love.*
Cum Amarem, *since or when I loved, or was loving.*

PERFECT TENSE.
Si Amaverim, *if I loved, or have loved.*
Cum Amaverim, *since, or when I loved.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.
Si Amavissem, *if I had loved, or should have loved.*
Cum Amavissem, *since, or when I had loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Amāre, *to love.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Amātūrum esse, *to be about to love.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Amāvisse, *to have loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Amātūrum fuisse, *to have been about to love.*

GERUNDS.

Aman-di, *of loving.*

Aman-do, *in loving.*

Aman-dum, *to love.*

SUPINE.

Amāt-um, *to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Am-ans, antis, *loving.*

FUTURE.

Am-ātūrus,* a, um, *about to love.*

The tenses of the verb *Sum*, when joined with the participle in *rus*, denote that a person has a *mind to do*, or is *upon the point of doing* something. Hence arises a new conjugation called *periphrastic*.†

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. Am-ātūrus (a, um,) *sum, I am about to love.*

IMPER. Am-ātūrus eram, *I was about to love.*

FUT. IMP. Am-ātūrus ero, (not fuero,) *I shall be about to love.*

PERF. Am-ātūrus fui, *I was, or have been, about to love.*

PLUPERF. Am-ātūrus fueram, *I had been about to love.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRES. Am-ātūrus sim, *I may be about to love.*

IMPER. Am-ātūrus essem, *I might be about to love.*

PERF. Am-ātūrus fuerim, *I may have been about to love.*

PLUPERF. Am-ātūrus fuissem, *I might have been about to love.*

The Subjunctive is conjugated like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Am-aturum esse, *to be about to love.*

PERF. Am-aturum fuisse, *to have been about to love.*

* Amaturus is used with a masculine, amatura with a feminine, and amaturum with a neuter noun.

† Zumpt.

THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts—Moneo, monui, monitum, monēre, to advise.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*am, do.*

- Sing. Mon-eo, *I advise, am advising, or do advise.*
 Mon-es, *thou advisest, art advising, or dost advise.*
 Mon-et, *he advises, is advising, or does advise.*
 Plur. Mon-ēmus, *we advise, are advising, or do advise.*
 Mon-ētis, *you advise, are advising, or do advise.*
 Mon-ent, *they advise, are advising, or do advise.*

IMPERFECT TENSE,—*was.*

- Sing. Mon-ēbam, *I was advising.*
 Mon-ēbas, *thou wast advising.*
 Mon-ēbat, *he was advising.*
 Plur. Mon-ēbāmus, *we were advising.*
 Mon-ēbātis, *you were advising.*
 Mon-ēbant, *they were advising.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will.*

- Sing. Mon-ēbo, *I shall or will advise.*
 Mon-ēbis, *thou shalt or wilt advise.*
 Mon-ēbit, *he shall or will advise.*
 Plur. Mon-ēbīmus, *we shall or will advise.*
 Mon-ēbītis, *you shall or will advise.*
 Mon-ēbunt, *they shall or will advise.*

PERFECT TENSE,—*have, did.*

- Sing. Monu-i, *I advised, or have advised.*
 Monu-isti, *thou advisedst, or hast advised.*
 Monu-it, *he advised, or has advised.*
 Plur. Monū-īmus, *we advised, or have advised.*
 Monu-istis, *you advised, or have advised.*
 Monu-ērunt vel Monu-ēre, *they advised, or have advised.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*had.*

- Sing. Monū-ēram, *I had advised.*
 Monu-eras, *thou hadst advised.*
 Monu-erat, *he had advised.*
 Plur. Monu-ērāmus, *we had advised.*
 Monu-erātis, *you had advised.*
 Monu-erant, *they had advised.*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will have.*Sing. Monū-ĕro, *I shall have advised.*Monu-eris, *thou wilt have advised.*Monu-erit, *he will have advised.*Plur. Monu-ĕrĭmus, *we shall have advised.*Monu-erĭtis, *you will have advised.*Monu-erint, *they will have advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. Mon-e, mon-ĕto, *advise.*Mon-ĕto, *advise he, or let him advise.*Plur. Mon-ĕte, mon-ĕtote, *advise.*Mon-ento, *advise they, or let them advise.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*may, can, should.*Sing. Mon-ĕām, *I may, can, or should advise.*Mon-eas, *thou mayst, canst, or shouldst advise.*Mon-eat, *he may, can, or should advise.*Plur. Mon-ĕāmus, *we may, can, or should advise.*Mon-eātis, *you may, can, or should advise.*Mon-eant, *they may, can, or should advise.*IMPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, should.*S. Mon-ĕrem, *I might, could, would, or should advise.*Mon-ĕres, *thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst advise.*Mon-ĕret, *he might, could, would, or should advise.*P. Mon-ĕrĕmus, *we might, could, would, or should advise.*Mon-ĕrĕtis, *you might, could, would, or should advise.*Mon-ĕrent, *they might, could, would, or should advise.*PERFECT TENSE,—*may have.*Sing. Monū-ĕrim, *I may have advised.*Monu-eris, *thou mayst have advised.*Monu-erit, *he may have advised.*Plur. Monu-ĕrĭmus, *we may have advised.*Monu-erĭtis, *you may have advised.*Monu-erint, *they may have advised.*PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, should have.*

S.	Monu-issem, <i>I might, could, would, or should</i>	} <i>have advised.</i>
	Monu-isses, <i>thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, &c.</i>	
	Monu-isset, <i>he might, could, would, or should</i>	
P.	Monu-issĕmus, <i>we might, could, would, or should</i>	
	Monu-issĕtis, <i>you might, would, would, or should</i>	
	Monu-issent, <i>they might, could, would, or should</i>	

The Subjunctive is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the sign prefixed.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Mon-ēre, *to advise.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Mon-ītūrum esse, *to be about to advise.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Mon-uisse, *to have advised.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Mon-ītūrum fuisse, *to have been about to advise.*

GERUNDS.

Monen-di, *of advising.*
Monen-do, *in advising.*
Monen-dum, *to advise.*

SUPINE.

Mon-ītum, *to advise.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Mon-ens, entis, *advising.*

FUTURE.

Mon-īturus, a, um, *about to advise.*

The Periphrastic Conjugation, *Monitūrus sum*, &c.

THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts—Rego, rexi, rectum, regēre, *to rule.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*am, do.*

- Sing. Rēg-ō, *I rule, am ruling, or do rule.*
Reg-is, *thou rulest, art ruling, or dost rule.*
Reg-it, *he rules, is ruling, or does rule.*
Plur. Reg-imus, *we rule, are ruling, or do rule.*
Reg-itis, *you rule, are ruling, or do rule.*
Reg-unt, *they rule, are ruling, or do rule.*

IMPERFECT TENSE,—*was.*

- Sing. Reg-ēbam, *I was ruling.*
Reg-ēbas, *thou wast ruling.*
Reg-ēbat, *he was ruling.*
Plur. Reg-ēbāmus, *we were ruling.*
Reg-ēbātis, *you were ruling.*
Reg-ēbant, *they were ruling.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will.*

- Sing. Reg-am, *I shall or will rule.*
Reg-es, *thou shalt or wilt rule.*
Reg-et, *he shall or will rule.*

- Plur. Reg-ēmus, *we shall or will rule.*
 Reg-ētis, *you shall or will rule.*
 Reg-ent, *they shall or will rule.*

PERFECT TENSE,—*have, did.*

- Sing. Rēx-ī, *I ruled or have ruled.*
 Rex-isti, *thou ruledst or hast ruled.*
 Rex-it, *he ruled or has ruled.*
 Plur. Rex-īmus, *we ruled or have ruled.*
 Rex-istis, *you ruled or have ruled.*
 Rex-ērunt, } *they ruled or have ruled.*
 vel Rex-ēre, }

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*had.*

- Sing. Rex-eram, *I had ruled.*
 Rex-eras, *thou hadst ruled.*
 Rex-erat, *he had ruled.*
 Plur. Rex-erāmus, *we had ruled.*
 Rex-erātis, *you had ruled.*
 Rex-erant, *they had ruled.*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will have.*

- Sing. Rex-ero, *I shall have ruled.*
 Rex-eris, *thou wilt have ruled.*
 Rex-erit, *he will have ruled.*
 Plur. Rex-erīmus, *we shall have ruled.*
 Rex-eritis, *you will have ruled.*
 Rex-erint, *they will have ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

- Sing. Reg-e, reg-ito, *rule thou.*
 Reg-ito, *rule he or let him rule.*
 Plur. Reg-ite, reg-itōte, *rule you.*
 Reg-unto, *rule they or let them rule.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*may, can, should.*

- Sing. Reg-am, *I may, can, or should rule.*
 Reg-as, *thou mayst, canst, or shouldst rule.*
 Reg-at, *he may, can, or should rule.*
 Plur. Reg-āmus, *we may, can, or should rule.*
 Reg-ātis, *you may, can, or should rule.*
 Reg-ant, *they may, can, or should rule.*

IMPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, should.*

- S. Reg-ĕrem, *I might, could, would, or should rule.*
 Reg-eres, *thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst rule.*
 Reg-eret, *he might, could, would, or should rule.*
 P. Reg-ĕrĕmus, *we might, could, would, or should rule.*
 Reg-erĕtis, *you might, could, would, or should rule.*
 Reg-erent, *they might, could, would, or should rule.*

PERFECT TENSE,—*may have.*

- Sing. Rex-ĕrim, *I may have ruled.*
 Rex-eris, *thou mayst have ruled.*
 Rex-erit, *he may have ruled.*
 Plur. Rex-ĕrĭmus, *we may have ruled.*
 Rex-ĕrtis, *you may have ruled.*
 Rex-erint, *they may have ruled.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, or should have.*

- S. Rex-issem, *I might, could, would, or should have ruled.*
 Rex-isses, *thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have ruled.*
 Rex-isset, *he might, could, would, or should have ruled.*
 P. Rex-issĕmus, *we might, could, would, or should have ruled.*
 Rex-issĕtis, *you might, could, would, or should have ruled.*
 Rex-issent, *they might, could, would, or should have ruled.*

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the sign prefixed.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Reg-ĕre, *to rule.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Rectū-rum esse, *to be about to rule.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Rex-isse, *to have ruled.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Rectū-rum fuisse, *to have been about to rule.*

GERUNDS.

Regen-di, *of ruling.*
 Regen-do, *in ruling.*
 Regen-dum, *to rule.*

SUPINĒ.

Rectum, *to rule.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Reg-ens, entis, *ruling.*

FUTURE.

Rectū-rus, a, um, *about to rule.*

The Periphrastic Conjugation, *Recturus sum*, &c.

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts—Audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, to hear.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—am, do.

- Sing. Aud-īŏ, *I hear, am hearing, or do hear.*
 Aud-is, *thou hearest, art hearing, or dost hear.*
 Aud-it, *he hears, is hearing, or does hear.*
 Plur. Aud-īmus, *we hear, are hearing, or do hear.*
 Aud-itis, *you hear, are hearing, or do hear.*
 Aud-iunt, *they hear, are hearing, or do hear.*

IMPERFECT TENSE,—was.

- S. Aud-iēbam, *I was*
 Aud-iēbas, *thou wast*
 Aud-iēbat, *he was*
 P. Aud-iēbāmus, *we were*
 Aud-iēbātis, *you were*
 Aud-iēbant, *they were*

hearing.

PERFECT TENSE,—have, did.

- S. Audīv-i, *I heard,*
 Audīv-isti, *thou heardst,*
 Audīv-it, *he heard,*
 P. Audīv-īmus, *we heard,*
 Audīv-istis, *you heard,*
 Audīv-ērunt } *they*
 vel Audīv-ēre, } *heard,*

or have heard.

FUT. IMPERFECT,—shall or will.

- S. Aud-iam, *I shall*
 Aud-iēs, *thou shalt*
 Aud-iet, *he shall*
 P. Aud-iēmus, *we shall*
 Aud-iētis, *you shall*
 Aud-ient, *they shall*

or will hear.

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—had.

- S. Audīv-eram, *I had*
 Audīv-eras, *thou hadst*
 Audīv-erat, *he had*
 P. Audīv-ērāmus, *we had*
 Audīv-erātis, *you had*
 Audīv-erant, *they had*

heard.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE,—shall or will have.

- Sing. Audīv-ĕro, *I shall have heard.*
 Audīv-eris, *thou wilt have heard.*
 Audīv-erit, *he will have heard.*
 Plur. Audīv-ĕrīmus, *we shall have heard.*
 Audīv-eritis, *you will have heard.*
 Audīv-erint, *they will have heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

- Sing. Aud-i, aud-īto, *hear thou.*
 Aud-īto, *hear he, or let him hear.*
 Plur. Aud-īte, aud-ītōte, *hear you.*
 Aud-iunto, *hear they, or let them hear.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*may, can, should.*

- Sing. Aud-iam, *I may, can, or should hear.*
 Aud-ias, *thou mayst, canst, or shouldst hear.*
 Aud-iat, *he may, can, or should hear.*
- Plur. Aud-iāmus, *we may, can, or should hear.*
 Aud-iātis, *you may, can, or should hear.*
 Aud-iant, *they may, can, or should hear.*

IMP. TENSE,—*might, could, &c.*

- S. Aud-irem, *I might,*
 Aud-ires, *thou mightst,*
 Aud-iret, *he might,*
- P. Aud-irēmus, *we might,*
 Aud-irētis, *you might,*
 Aud-irent, *they might,*

*could, would, or
 should hear.*

PERFECT TENSE,—*may have.*

- S. Audiv-ērim, *I may*
 Audiv-eris, *thou mayst*
 Audiv-erit, *he may*
- P. Audiv-ērīmus, *we may*
 Audiv-ērītis, *you may*
 Audiv-erint, *they may*

have heard.

PLUPERFECT TENSE, *might, could, would, should have.*

- S. Audiv-issem, *I might, could, would, or should have heard.*
 Audiv-isses, *thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have heard.*
 Audiv-isset, *he might, could, would, or should have heard.*
- P. Audiv-issēmus, *we might, could, would, or should have heard.*
 Audiv-issētis, *you might, could, would, or should have heard.*
 Audiv-issent, *they might, could, would, or should have heard.*

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the sign prefixed.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Aud-īre, *to hear.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Auditū-rum esse, *to be about to hear.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Audiv-isse, *to have heard.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Auditū-rum fuisse, *to have been about to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Audien-di, *of hearing.*
 Audien-do, *in hearing.*
 Audien-dum, *to hear.*

SUPINE.

Audī-tum, *to hear.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Audi-ens, entis, *hearing.*

FUTURE.

Auditū-rus, a, um, *about to hear.*The Periphrastic Conjugation, *Auditurus sum, &c.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

Formation of the Tenses in the Passive Voice.

1. The *Present* Indicative is formed from the Present Indicative Active, by adding *r*.
2. The *Imperfect* Indicative is formed from the Imperfect Indicative Active, by changing *m* into *r*.
3. The *Future Imperfect* Indicative is formed from the Future Imperfect Active, by adding *r* in the First and Second Conjugations, and by changing *m* into *r* in the Third and Fourth Conjugations.
4. The *Present* and *Imperfect* Potential are formed from the Present and Imperfect Potential Active, by changing *m* into *r*.
5. The *Perfect* and *Pluperfect* Tenses of the Indicative, Potential, and Infinitive Moods, and the *Future Perfect* of the Indicative, are formed from the Participle Perfect with some tense of the verb *sum*.
6. The *Imperative* is the same as the Infinitive Active.
7. The *Infinitive Present* is formed from the Infinitive Present Active by changing *e* in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations into *i*, and in the Third *ere* into *i*.
8. The *Future Imperfect* Infinitive is the Supine Active with *iri*.
9. The *Future Perfect* Infinitive is the Participle Future Passive, with the verb *fuisse*.
10. The *Supine* is formed from the Active by taking away *m*.
11. The Participle *Perfect* (or Present) is formed from the Supine Active by changing *m* into *s*.
12. The Participle *Future* is formed from the Participle Present Active by changing *s* into *dus*.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts—Amor, amātus sum *vel* fui, amāri, *to be loved*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*am*.

S. Am-ōr, <i>I am loved.</i>	P. Am-āmur, <i>we are loved.</i>
Am-āris } <i>thou art loved.</i>	Am-āmini, <i>you are loved.</i>
vel āre, }	Am-antur, <i>they are loved.</i>
Am-ātur, <i>he is loved.</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE,—*was*.

S. Am-ābar, <i>I was loved.</i>	P. Am-ābāmur, <i>we were loved.</i>
Am-ābāris vel } <i>thou wast</i>	Am-ābāmini, <i>you were loved.</i>
abāre, }	Am-ābantur, <i>they were loved.</i>
Am-ābātur, <i>he was loved.</i>	

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will be*.

S. Am-ābor, <i>I shall</i>	P. Am-ābīmur, <i>we shall</i>
Am-ābēris } <i>thou</i>	Am-ābīmini, <i>you shall</i>
vel ābēre, }	Am-ābuntur, <i>they shall</i>
Am-ābītur, <i>he shall</i>	

PERFECT TENSE,—*was, have been*.

S. Amāt-us	{ sum* vel fui, <i>I have</i>	} <i>been loved.</i>
	{ es vel fuisti, <i>thou hast</i>	
	{ est vel fuit, <i>he has</i>	
P. Amāt-i	{ sūmus vel fuīmus, <i>we have</i>	
	{ estis vel fuistis, <i>you have</i>	
	{ sunt, fuērunt vel fuēre, <i>they have</i>	

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*had been*.

S. Amāt-us	{ eram vel fuēram, <i>I had</i>	} <i>been loved.</i>
	{ eras vel fueras, <i>thou hadst</i>	
	{ erat vel fuerat, <i>he had</i>	
P. Amāt-i	{ erāmus vel fuerāmus, <i>we had</i>	
	{ erātis vel fuerātis, <i>you had</i>	
	{ erant vel fuerant, <i>they had</i>	

* The tenses formed by *fui, fueram, fuero*, express more emphatically the completion of the action than those by *sum, eram, ero*. *Amatus sum* implies the completion of an action, without reference to the precise time; *amatus fui* implies that a thing has been finished some time ago.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will have been.*

S. Amāt-us	{	ero <i>vel</i> fuēro,	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have been loved.</i>
		eris <i>vel</i> fueris,	<i>thou wilt</i>	
		erit <i>vel</i> fuerit,	<i>he will</i>	
P. Amāt-i	{	erīmus <i>vel</i> fuerīmus,	<i>we shall</i>	
		eritis <i>vel</i> fueritis,	<i>you will</i>	
		erunt <i>vel</i> fuerint,	<i>they will</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Am-āre,	{	<i>be thou loved.</i>		P. Am-āmini, <i>be you loved.</i>
am-ātor,				Am-antor, <i>let them be loved.</i>
Am-ātor,		<i>let him be loved.</i>		

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*may, can, &c.* | IMPERF. TENSE, *might, could, &c.*

S. Am-er,	{	<i>I may,</i>	} <i>can or should be loved.</i>	S. Am-ärer,	{	<i>I might,</i>	} <i>could, would, or should be loved.</i>
		Am-ēris,				Am-ārēris	
		<i>vel</i> ēre,				<i>vel</i> arēre,	
Am-ētur,		<i>he may,</i>		Am-ārētur,		<i>he might,</i>	
P. Am-ēmur,		<i>we may,</i>		P. Am-ārēmur,		<i>we might,</i>	
Am-ēmini,		<i>you may,</i>		Am-ārēmini,		<i>you might,</i>	
Am-entur,		<i>they may,</i>		Am-ārentur,		<i>they might,</i>	

PERFECT TENSE,—*may have been.*

S. Amāt-us	{	sim <i>vel</i> fuērīm,	<i>I may</i>	} <i>have been loved.</i>
		sis <i>vel</i> fueris,	<i>thou mayst</i>	
		sit <i>vel</i> fuerit,	<i>he may</i>	
P. Amāt-i	{	simus <i>vel</i> fuērīmus,	<i>we may</i>	
		sītis <i>vel</i> fuērītis,	<i>you may</i>	
		sint <i>vel</i> fuerint,	<i>they may</i>	

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, should have been.*

S. Amāt-us	{	essem <i>vel</i> fuissem,	<i>I might, &c.</i>	} <i>have been loved.</i>
		esses <i>vel</i> fuisses,	<i>thou mightst, &c.</i>	
		esset <i>vel</i> fuisset,	<i>he might, &c.</i>	
P. Amāt-i	{	essēmus <i>vel</i> fuissēmus,	<i>we might, &c.</i>	
		essētis <i>vel</i> fuissētis,	<i>you might, &c.</i>	
		essent <i>vel</i> fuissent,	<i>they might, &c.</i>	

The Subjunctive is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the sign prefixed.

Present. *Si Amer*, If I be loved, or should be loved; or *Cum Amer*, since I am loved.
 Imperf. *Si Amerer*, If I were loved, or might, could, would, or should be loved.
 Perfect. *Si Amatus sim*, If I have been loved, or might, or should have been loved.
 Pluperf. *Si Amatus essem*, If I had been loved, or should have been loved.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Am-āri, *to be loved.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Amāt-um iri, *to be about to be loved.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Amāt-um esse *vel* fuisse, *to have been loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Aman-dum fuisse, *shall have been loved.*

SUPINE.

Amāt-u, *to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT & PERFECT.

Amāt-us, a, um, *loved or being loved.*

FUTURE.

Aman-dus, a, um, *to be loved.*

Periphrastic Conjugation, *Amandus sum*, I am to be loved, *deserving*, or *requiring* to be loved. The neuter with *esse* and the dative of the person, expresses the *necessity* under which a person is to do or suffer a thing; as *tibi scribendum est*, it is necessary for thee to write, or thou must write.



THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts—Moneor, monitus sum *vel* fui, monēri, *to be advised.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—am.

S. Mōn-ēor, *I am advised.*

Mon-ēris } *thou art advised.*
vel ēre, }

Mon-ētur, *he is advised.*P. Mon-ēmur, *we are advised.*

Mon-ēmini, *you are advised.*
 Mon-entur, *they are advised.*

IMPERFECT TENSE,—was.

S. Mon-ēbar, *I was advised.*

Mon-ēbāris } *thou wast*
vel ebāre, } *advised.*

Mon-ēbātur, *he was advised.*P. Mon-ēbāmur, *we were*

Mon-ēbāmini, *you were*
 Mon-ēbantur, *they were*

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE,—shall, will be.

S. Mon-ēbor, *I shall*

Mon-ēbēris } *thou*
vel ebēre, } *shall*

Mon-ēbitur, *he shall*P. Mon-ēbīmur, *we shall*

Mon-ēbimini, *you shall*
 Mon-ēbuntur, { *they*

{ *shall*

or will be
 advised.

PERFECT TENSE,—*was, have been.*

S. Monit-us	{	sum vel fui,	I have	} been advised.
		es vel fuisti,	thou hast	
		est vel fuit,	he has	
P. Monit-i	{	sūmus vel fūimus,	we have	
		estis vel fuistis,	you have	
		sunt, fuērunt vel fuēre,	they have	

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*had been.*

S. Monit-us	{	eram vel fūeram,	I had	} been advised.
		eras vel fueras,	thou hadst	
		erat vel fuerat,	he had	
P. Monit-i	{	erāmus vel fuerāmus,	we had	
		erātis vel fuerātis,	you had	
		erant vel fuerant,	they had	

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will have been.*

S. Monit-us	{	ero vel fūero,	I shall	} have been advised.
		eris vel fueris,	thou wilt	
		erit vel fuerit,	he will	
P. Monit-i	{	erīmus vel fuerīmus,	we shall	
		eritis vel fueritis,	you will	
		erunt vel fuerint,	they will	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mon-ēre,	} be thou advised.	P. Mon-ēmini,	be you advised.
mon-ētor,		Mon-entor,	let them be advised.
Mon-ētor,	let him be advised.		

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*may, can, &c.*

S. Mon-ear,	I may,	} can, or should be advised.
Mon-eāris	thou	
vel eāre,	mayst,	
Mon-eātur,	he may,	
P. Mon-eāmur,	we may,	
Mon-eāmini,	you may,	
Mon-eantur,	they may,	

IMPERF. TENSE, *might, could, &c.*

S. Mon-ērer,	I might,	} could, would, or should be advised.
Mon-ērēris	thou	
vel erēre,	mightst,	
Mon-ērētur,	he might,	
P. Mon-ērēmur,	we might,	
Mon-ērēmini,	you might,	
Mon-ērentur,	they might,	

PERFECT TENSE,—*may have been.*

S. Monit-us	{	sim vel fuerim,	I may	} have been advised.
		sis vel fueris,	thou mayst	
		sit vel fuerit,	he may	
P. Monit-i	{	sīmus vel fuērīmus,	we may	
		sītis vel fueritis,	you may	
		sint vel fuerint,	they may	

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, should have been.*

S. Monit-us	{	essem vel fuisset,	<i>I might,</i>	} <i>have been advised.</i> <i>could, would, or should</i>
		esses vel fuisses,	<i>thou mightst,</i>	
		esset vel fuisset,	<i>he might,</i>	
P. Monit-i	{	essēmus vel fuissēmus,	<i>we might,</i>	
		essētis vel fuissētis,	<i>you might,</i>	
		essent vel fuissent,	<i>they might,</i>	

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the sign prefixed.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Mon-ēri, *to be advised.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Monīt-um iri, *to be about to be advised.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Monīt-um esse vel fuisse, *to have been advised.*

Periphrastic Conjugation, *Monendus sum, eram, &c. I am, was, &c. to be advised.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Monen-dum fuisse, *shall have been advised.*

SUPINE.

Monit-u, *to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT AND PERFECT.

Monit-us, a, um, *advised, or being advised.*

FUTURE.

Monen-dus, a, um, *to be advised.*

THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts—Regor, rectus sum *vel* fui, regi, *to be ruled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*am.*

S. Rēg-ōr, *I am ruled.*

Reg-ēris } *thou art ruled.*
vel ēre,

Reg-ītur, *he is ruled.*

P. Reg-īmur, *we are ruled.*

Reg-īmini, *you are ruled.*

Reg-untur, *they are ruled.*

IMPERFECT TENSE,—*was.*

S. Reg-ēbar, *I was ruled.*

Reg-ebāris } *thou wast ruled.*
vel ebāre,

Reg-ebātur, *he was ruled.*

P. Reg-ebāmur, *we were ruled.*

Reg-ebāmini, *you were ruled.*

Reg-ebantur, *they were ruled.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will be.*

S. Reg-ar,	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>or will be ruled.</i>	P. Reg-ēmur,	<i>we shall</i>	} <i>or will be ruled.</i>
Reg-ēris	<i>thou shalt</i>		Reg-ēmini,	<i>you shall</i>	
vel ēre,			Reg-entur,	<i>they shall</i>	
Reg-ētur,	<i>he shall</i>				

PERFECT TENSE,—*was, have been.*

S. Rect-us	{ sum <i>vel</i> fui, es <i>vel</i> fuisti, est <i>vel</i> fuit, sūmus <i>vel</i> fuīmus, estis <i>vel</i> fuistis, sunt, fuērunt <i>vel</i> fuēre, }	<i>I have</i> <i>thou hast</i> <i>he has</i> <i>we have</i> <i>you have</i> <i>they have</i>	} <i>been ruled.</i>
P. Rect-i			

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*had been.*

S. Rect-us	{ ēram <i>vel</i> fūeram, eras <i>vel</i> fueras, erat <i>vel</i> fuerat, erāmus <i>vel</i> fūerāmus, erātis <i>vel</i> fuerātis, erant <i>vel</i> fuerant, }	<i>I had</i> <i>thou hadst</i> <i>he had</i> <i>we had</i> <i>you had</i> <i>they had</i>	} <i>been ruled.</i>
P. Rect-i			

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will have been.*

S. Rect-us	{ ēro <i>vel</i> fūero, eris <i>vel</i> fueris, erit <i>vel</i> fuerit, erīmus <i>vel</i> fuerīmus, erītis <i>vel</i> fuerītis, erunt <i>vel</i> fuerint, }	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i>	} <i>have been ruled.</i>
P. Rect-i			

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Reg-ēre	} <i>be thou ruled.</i>	P. Reg-imini,	<i>be you ruled.</i>
reg-itor,		Reg-untor,	<i>let them be ruled.</i>
Reg-itor,	<i>let him be ruled.</i>		

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*may, can, &c.*

S. Reg-ar,	<i>I may,</i>	} <i>can, or should be ruled.</i>
Reg-āris	<i>thou mayst,</i>	
vel āre,		
Reg-ātur,	<i>he may,</i>	
P. Reg-āmur,	<i>we may,</i>	}
Reg-āmini,	<i>you may,</i>	
Reg-antur,	<i>they may,</i>	

IMPERF. TENSE, *might, could, &c.*

S. Reg-erer,	<i>I might,</i>	} <i>could, couldst, or should be ruled.</i>
Reg-ērēris	<i>thou</i>	
vel ērēre,	<i>mightst,</i>	
Reg-erētur,	<i>he might,</i>	
P. Reg-erēmur,	<i>we might,</i>	}
Reg-erēmini,	<i>you might,</i>	
Reg-erentur,	<i>they might,</i>	

PERFECT TENSE,—*may have been.*

S. Rect-us	{	sim <i>vel</i> fūērīm,	<i>I may</i>	} <i>have been ruled.</i>
		sis <i>vel</i> fueris,	<i>thou mayst</i>	
		sit <i>vel</i> fuerit,	<i>he may</i>	
P. Rect-i	{	simus <i>vel</i> fuērīmus,	<i>we may</i>	} <i>have been ruled.</i>
		sitis <i>vel</i> fueritis,	<i>you may</i>	
		sint <i>vel</i> fuerint,	<i>they may</i>	

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, should have been.*

S. Rect-us	{	essem <i>vel</i> fuīsem,	<i>I might,</i>	} <i>could, would, or should have been ruled.</i>
		esses <i>vel</i> fuisses,	<i>thou mightst,</i>	
		esset <i>vel</i> fuisset,	<i>he might,</i>	
P. Rect-i	{	essēmus <i>vel</i> fuissēmus,	<i>we might,</i>	} <i>could, would, or should have been ruled.</i>
		essētis <i>vel</i> fuissētis,	<i>you might,</i>	
		essent <i>vel</i> fuissent,	<i>they might,</i>	

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the sign prefixed.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Reg-i, *to be ruled.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Rect-um iri, *to be about to be ruled.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Rect-um esse *vel* fuisse, *to have been ruled.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Regen-dum fuisse, *shall have been ruled.*

SUPINE.

Rect-u, *to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT AND PERFECT.

Rect-us, a, um, *ruled, or being ruled.*

FUTURE.

Regen-dus, a, um, *to be ruled.*

Periphrastie Conjugation, *Regendus sum, eram, &c. I am, was, &c. to be ruled.*

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts—Audior, audītus sum *vel* fui, audīri, *to be heard.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*am.*

S. Aud-ior, *I am heard.*

Aud-īris } *thou art heard.*
vel īre, }

Aud-ītur, *he is heard.*

P. Aud-īmur, *we are heard.*

Aud-īmini, *you are heard.*

Aud-iuntur, *they are heard.*

IMPERFECT TENSE,—*was*.

S. Aud-iēbar, <i>I was heard.</i>	P. Aud-iēbāmur, <i>we were heard</i>
Aud-iēbāris } <i>thou wast</i>	Aud-iēbāmini, <i>you were heard.</i>
vel iebāre, } <i>heard.</i>	Aud-iēbantur, <i>they were</i>
Aud-iēbātur, <i>he was heard.</i>	<i>heard.</i>

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will be*.

S. Aud-iar, <i>I shall</i>	P. Aud-iēmur, <i>we shall</i>
Aud-iēris } <i>thou shalt</i>	Aud-iēmini, <i>you shall</i>
vel iēre, } <i>or will be</i>	Aud-ientur, <i>they shall</i>
Aud-iētur, <i>he shall</i>	<i>heard.</i>

PERFECT TENSE,—*was, have been*.

S. Audīt-us {	sum vel fui, <i>I have</i>	} <i>been heard.</i>
es vel fuisti,	<i>thou hast</i>	
est vel fuit,	<i>he has</i>	
P. Audīt-i {	sūmus vel fuīmus, <i>we have</i>	} <i>heard.</i>
estis vel fuistis,	<i>you have</i>	
sunt, fuērunt vel fuēre,	<i>they have</i>	

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*had been*.

S. Audīt-us {	ēram vel fūeram, <i>I had</i>	} <i>been heard.</i>
eras vel fueras,	<i>thou hadst</i>	
erat vel fuerat,	<i>he had</i>	
P. Audīt-i {	erāmus vel fuerāmus, <i>we had</i>	} <i>heard.</i>
erātis vel fuerātis,	<i>you had</i>	
erant vel fuerant,	<i>they had</i>	

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will have been*.

S. Audīt-us {	ēro vel fuēro, <i>I shall</i>	} <i>have been heard</i>
eris vel fueris,	<i>thou wilt</i>	
erit vel fuerit,	<i>he will</i>	
P. Audīt-i {	erīmus vel fuerīmus, <i>we shall</i>	} <i>heard</i>
eritis vel fuerītis,	<i>you will</i>	
erunt vel fuerint,	<i>they will</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-īre, } <i>be thou heard.</i>	P. Aud-īmini, <i>be you heard.</i>
aud-ītor, } <i>heard.</i>	Aud-iuntor, <i>let them be</i>
Aud-ītor, <i>let him be heard.</i>	<i>heard.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*may, can, &c.*

S. Aud-iar, *I may,*
 Aud-iāris } *thou*
vel iāre, } *mayst,*
 Aud-iātur, *he may,*
 P. Aud-iāmur, *we may,*
 Aud-iāmini, *you may,*
 Aud-iantur, *they may,*

can,
or should be
heard.

IMPERF. TENSE, *might, could, &c.*

S. Aud-īrer, *I might,*
 Aud-īrēris } *thou*
vel irēre, } *mightst,*
 Aud-īrētur, *he might,*
 P. Aud-irēmur, *we might,*
 Aud-irēmini, *you might,*
 Aud-irentur, *they might,*

could,
would, or should
be heard.

PERFECT TENSE,—*may have been.*

S. Audīt-us { *sim vel fuerim,* *I may*
 { *sis vel fueris,* *thou mayst*
 { *sit vel fuerit,* *he may*
 P. Audīt-i { *simus vel fūerimus,* *we may*
 { *sitis vel fueritis,* *you may*
 { *sint vel fuerint,* *they may*

have been heard

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, should have been.*

S. Audīt-us { *essem vel fuisset,* *I might, &c.*
 { *esses vel fuisses,* *thou mightst, &c.*
 { *esset vel fuisset,* *he might, &c.*
 P. Audīt-i { *essēmus v. fuissēmus,* *we might, &c.*
 { *essētis vel fuissētis,* *you might, &c.*
 { *essent vel fuissent,* *they might, &c.*

have been heard

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the sign prefixed.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Aud-īri, *to be heard.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Audīt-um iri, *to be about to be heard.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Audīt-um esse *vel* fuisse, *to have been heard.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Audien-dum fuisse, *shall have been heard.*

SUPINE.

Audīt-u, *to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT & PERFECT.

Audīt-us, a, um, *heard or being heard.*

FUTURE.

Audien-dus, a, um, *to be heard.*

Periphrastic Conjugation, *Audiendus sum, eram, &c.* I *am, was, &c.* to be heard.

THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *io*.

ACTIVE.

Principal Parts—Căpio, cēpi, cāptum, cāpēre, *to take*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Tense.</i>	Căp-io, is, it;—ŷmus, ŷtis, iunt.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Cap-iebam, iebas, iebat;—iebāmus, iebātis, iebant.
<i>Fut. Imperf.</i>	Cap-iam, ies, iet;—iēmus, iētis, iēnt.
<i>Perf.</i>	Cēp-i, isti, it;—ŷmus, istis, ērunt <i>vel</i> ēre.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Cep-eram, eras, erat;—eramus, eratis, erant.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	Cep-ero, ēris, ērit;—erīmus, erītis, ērint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Cap-e, ito, ito;—ite, itōte, iunto.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

<i>Pres. Tense.</i>	Cap-iam, ias, iat;—iamus, iatis, iant.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Cap-ērem, ēres, ēret;—erēmus, erētis, erent.
<i>Perf.</i>	Cep-erim, ēris, ērit;—erīmus, erītis, ērint.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Cep-issem, isses, isset;—issēmus, issētis, issent.

The Subjunctive is conjugated like the Potential.

	INFINITIVE MOOD.	GERUNDS.	SUP. & PART.
<i>Pres. & Imp.</i>	Cāpēre.	Cāpīen-di,	<i>Sup.</i> Captum.
<i>Fut. Imp.</i>	Captūrum esse.	——do,	PARTICIPLES
<i>Perf. & Plup.</i>	Cēpisse.	——dum,	<i>pr.</i> Capiens.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	Captūrum fuisse.		<i>fut.</i> Capturus.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Tense.</i>	Cap-ior, ēris <i>vel</i> ēre, ŷtur;—ŷmur, ŷmini, ŷuntur.
<i>Imperf.</i>	Cap-iebar, iebaris <i>vel</i> iebāre, iebātur;—iebāmur, iebāmini, iebantur.
<i>Fut. Imperf.</i>	Cap-iar, iēris <i>vel</i> iēre, iētur;—iēmur, iemini, ientur.
<i>Perf.</i>	Captus sum <i>vel</i> fui, es <i>vel</i> fuisti, est <i>vel</i> fuit;—capti sumus <i>vel</i> fuimus, estis <i>vel</i> fuistis, sunt, fuerunt <i>vel</i> fuēre.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Captus eram <i>vel</i> fueram, eras <i>vel</i> fueras, erat <i>vel</i> fuerat;—capti eramus <i>vel</i> fueramus, eratis <i>vel</i> fueratis, erant <i>vel</i> fuerant.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	Captus ero <i>vel</i> fuero, eris <i>vel</i> fueris, erit <i>vel</i> fuerit;—capti erīmus <i>vel</i> fuerīmus, erītis <i>vel</i> fuerītis, erunt <i>vel</i> fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Cap-ĕre, ĭtor, ĭtor;—imĭni, iuntor.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Pres. Tense. Cap-iar, iāris *vel* iāre, iātur;—iāmur, iāmini, iāntur.*Imperf.* Cap-ĕrer, ĕrĕris *vel* ĕrĕre, ĕrĕtur;—ĕrĕmur, ĕrĕmĭni, ĕrentur.*Perf.* Captus sim *vel* fuerim, sis *vel* fueris, sit *vel* fuerit;—capti sĭmus *vel* fuĕrimus, sĭtis *vel* fuerĭtis, sint *vel* fuerint.*Pluperf.* Captus essem *vel* fuisset, esses *vel* fuisses, esset *vel* fuisset;—capti essemus *vel* fuissetis, essetis *vel* fuissetis, essent *vel* fuissent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Căpi, *to be taken.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Captum iri, *to be about to be taken.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Captum esse *vel* fuisse, *to have been taken.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Capiendum fuisse, *shall have been taken.*

SUPINE.

Captu, *to be taken.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Captus, a, um, *taken, or being taken.**Fut.* Capiendus, a, um, *to be taken.*

A VERB DEPONENT.

The Principal Parts—Miror, mirātus sum *vel* fui, mirārĭ, *to admire.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—am, do.

S. Mir-or,	<i>I admire,</i>	} <i>am admiring, or do admire.</i>
Mir-āris	<i>thou ad-</i>	
<i>vel</i> āre,	<i>mirest,</i>	
Mir-ātur,	<i>he admires,</i>	
P. Mir-āmur,	<i>we admire,</i>	}
Mir-āmini,	<i>you admire,</i>	
Mir-antur,	<i>they admire,</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE,—was.

S. Mir-ābar,	<i>I was</i>	} <i>am admiring.</i>
Mir-ābāris	<i>thou wast</i>	
<i>vel</i> abāre,		
Mir-ābātur,	<i>he was</i>	
P. Mir-ābāmur,	<i>we were</i>	}
Mir-ābāmini,	<i>you were</i>	
Mir-ābantur,	<i>they were</i>	

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will.*

S. Mir-ābor,	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>admire.</i> <i>or will</i>	P. Mir-ābimur, <i>we shall</i>	} <i>admire.</i> <i>or will</i>
Mir-ābēris	<i>thou</i>		Mir-ābimini, <i>you shall</i>	
<i>vel abēre,</i>	<i>shalt</i>		Mir-ābuntur, <i>they shall</i>	
Mir-ābitur,	<i>he shall</i>			

PERFECT TENSE,—*have, did.*

S. Mirātus	{ <i>sum vel fui,</i> <i>es vel fuisti,</i> <i>est vel fuit,</i>	<i>I admired,</i> <i>thou admiredst,</i> <i>he admired,</i>	} <i>or have admired</i>
P. Mirāti	{ <i>sumus vel fuimus,</i> <i>estis vel fuistis,</i> <i>sunt, fuērunt vel fuēre,</i>	<i>we admired,</i> <i>you admired,</i> <i>they admired,</i>	

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*had.*

S. Mirātus	{ <i>eram vel fūeram,</i> <i>eras vel fueras,</i> <i>erat vel fuerat,</i>	<i>I had</i> <i>thou hadst</i> <i>he had</i>	} <i>admirer.</i>
P. Mirāti	{ <i>erāmus vel fuerāmus,</i> <i>erātis vel fuerātis,</i> <i>erant vel fuerant,</i>	<i>we had</i> <i>you had</i> <i>they had</i>	

FUTURE PERFECT,—*shall or will have.*

S. Mirātus	{ <i>ēro vel fūēro,</i> <i>eris vel fueris,</i> <i>erit vel fuerit,</i>	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i>	} <i>have admirer.</i>
P. Mirāti	{ <i>erimus vel fūerimus,</i> <i>eritis vel fueritis,</i> <i>erunt vel fuerint,</i>	<i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mir-āre,	} <i>admire thou.</i>	P. Mir-āmini, <i>admire you.</i>
mir-ātor,		Mir-antor, <i>let them admire.</i>
Mir-ātor,		

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*may, can, &c.*

S. Mir-er,	<i>I may,</i>	} <i>can, or should</i> <i>admire.</i>
Mir-ēris	<i>thou</i>	
<i>vel ēre,</i>	<i>mayst,</i>	
Mir-ētur,	<i>he may,</i>	
P. Mir-ēmur,	<i>we may,</i>	
Mir-ēmīni,	<i>you may,</i>	
Mir-entur,	<i>they may,</i>	

IMPERF. TENSE,—*might, &c.*

S. Mir-ārer,	<i>I might,</i>	} <i>could, would, or should</i> <i>admire.</i>
Mir-ārēris	<i>thou</i>	
<i>vel arēre,</i>	<i>mightst,</i>	
Mir-ārētur,	<i>he might,</i>	
P. Mir-ārēmur,	<i>we might,</i>	
Mir-ārēmīni,	<i>you might,</i>	
Mir-ārentur,	<i>they might,</i>	

PERFECT TENSE,—*may have.*

S. Mirātus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim } \textit{vel} \text{ fuerim,} \\ \text{sis } \textit{vel} \text{ fueris,} \\ \text{sit } \textit{vel} \text{ fuerit,} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{I may} \\ \textit{thou mayst} \\ \textit{he may} \end{array} \right.$	<i>have admired.</i>
P. Mirāti	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīmus } \textit{vel} \text{ fuērīmus,} \\ \text{sītis } \textit{vel} \text{ fueritis,} \\ \text{sint } \textit{vel} \text{ fuerint,} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{we may} \\ \textit{you may} \\ \textit{they may} \end{array} \right.$	

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, should have.*

S. Mirātus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essem } \textit{vel} \text{ fuisset,} \\ \text{esses } \textit{vel} \text{ fuisses,} \\ \text{esset } \textit{vel} \text{ fuisset,} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{I might, \&c.} \\ \textit{thou mightst, \&c.} \\ \textit{he might, \&c.} \end{array} \right.$	<i>have admired.</i>
P. Mirāti	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essēmus } \textit{vel} \text{ fuissēmus,} \\ \text{essētis } \textit{vel} \text{ fuissētis,} \\ \text{essent } \textit{vel} \text{ fuissent,} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{we might, \&c.} \\ \textit{you might, \&c.} \\ \textit{they might, \&c.} \end{array} \right.$	

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the sign prefixed.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Mir-āri, *to admire.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT ACTIVE.

Mirāt-ūrum esse, *to be about to admire.*

FUTURE IMPERF. PASSIVE.

Mirāt-um iri, *to be about to be admired.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Mirāt-um esse *vel* fuisse, *to have admired.*

FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE.

Mirāt-ūrum fuisse, *to have been about to admire.*

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE.

Miran-dum fuisse, *shall have been admired.*

GERUNDS.

Miran-di, *of admiring.*

Miran-do, *in admiring.*

Miran-dum, *to admire.*

SUPINE ACTIVE.

Mirāt-um, *to admire.*

SUPINE PASSIVE.

Mirāt-u, *to be admired.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT ACTIVE.

Mir-ans, antis, *admiring.*

PERFECT ACTIVE.

Mirāt-us, a, um, *having admired.*

FUTURE ACTIVE.

Mirāt-ūrus, a, um, *about to admire.*

FUTURE PASSIVE.

Miran-dus, a, um, *to be admired.*

Rules for the Formation of the Perfect and Supine.

GENERAL RULES FOR COMPOUND VERBS.

Compound Verbs form their Preterperfect and Supine like their simples; as *doceo, docui, doctum, edoceo, edocui, edoctum*.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. The syllable which is doubled in the Perfect Tense of the simple verb is not doubled in the compound; as *pello, pepuli; repello, repuli*. But *Præcurro, repungo*, and the compounds of *do, sto, disco*, and *posco*, retain the double syllable.

2. These Supines change *a* into *e* when compounded; *cantum, captum, carptum, factum, fartum, jactum, partum, raptum, sparsum*.

3. Verbs which change *a* of the Present of the simple into *i* in the compound have *e* in the Supine; as *facio; perficio, perfēci, perfectum*. Except verbs ending in *do* and *go*, and the compounds of *habeo, placeo, salio, sapio*, and *statuo*.

4. Verbs which are defective in the Perfect want likewise the Supine.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

The First Conjugation makes *āvi* in the Perfect Tense, and *ātum* in the Supine; as *amo, amāvi, amātum*, to love.

Except the following, which make *ui, itum*; *crepo*,¹ to make a noise; *cubo*, to lie down; *domo*, to tame; *sono*, (in Horace, *sonatūrus*,) to sound; *tono*,² to thunder; *veto*, to forbid.

EXCEPT ALSO,

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>Do</i> , ³	<i>dēdi</i> ,	<i>dātum</i> ,	<i>to give.</i>
<i>Fricō</i> ,	<i>fricui</i> ,	{ <i>fricātum</i> ,	} <i>to rub.</i>
		{ <i>frictum</i> ,	
<i>Jūvo</i> , ⁴	<i>jūvi</i> ,	<i>jūtum</i> ,	<i>to help.</i>
<i>Lābo</i> ,	_____	_____	<i>to fall or faint.</i>

1. *Discrepo*, to differ, and *increpo*, to chide, have sometimes *āvī* and *ātum* as well as *ui, itum*.

2. *Intōno* has *intonatus* in the Perfect Participle.

3. *Circundo, pessundo, satundo, venundo*, are formed like *do*; but *Abdo, addo, condo, prodo, reddo*, belong to the Third Conjugation.

4. Future Participle *juvaturus*. *Adjūvo, jūvi*, has only *adjutum* in the Supine.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Lāvo,	lāvi,	{ lavātum, lautum, lōtum,	} <i>to wash.</i>
{ Mīco, Emīco, Dimīco,	{ micui, emicui, dimicāvi,	{ _____ emicatum, dimicātum,	{ <i>to shine.</i> <i>to shine forth.</i> <i>to fight.</i>
{ Nēco, Enēco, Inter- nēco,	{ necāvi, necui, enecāvi, enecui, necavi, necui,	{ necātum, enecātum, enectum, necatum, nectum,	{ <i>to kill.</i> <i>to kill.</i> <i>to destroy.</i>
Nexo,	_____	_____	<i>to bind.</i>
Plīco,	_____	_____	<i>to fold.</i>
Duplico, ⁵	uplicāvi,	uplicatum,	{ <i>to double.</i> (sup, multi, re.)
{ Explico, Explico,	{ explicavi, explicui,	{ explicatum, explicitum,	{ <i>to explain, but</i> <i>to unfold.</i>
Poto,	potavi,	{ potātum, pōtum,	} <i>to drink.</i>
Sēco,	secui,	sectum,	<i>to cut.</i>
Sto,	stēti,	stātum,	<i>to stand.</i>
Obsto,	obstīti,	obstātum,	<i>to hinder.</i>

So *consto*, *exsto*, and *præsto*, make *īti*, *ātum*; *præstitum* is also found. *Circumsto* and *antesto* have *stēti* without Supine. *Adsto*, *insto*, *resto*, have *stīti*, but no Supine. *Disto* and *supersto* have neither Perfect nor Supine.

THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

The Second Conjugation makes *ui*, *ītum*; as *Mōneo*, *monui*, *monītum*, to advise.

EXCEPTIONS.

Algeo,	alsi,	alsum,	<i>to shiver with cold.</i>
Arceo, ¹	arcui,	_____	<i>to drive away.</i>

Its compounds have *ītum* in the supine; as
Exerceo, exercui, exercītum, *to exercise.*

5. *Duplico*, *multiplīco*, *replīco*, and *supplīco*, have *āvi*, *ātum*; the other compounds of *plīco*; as *applīco*, *implicō*, have either *ui* and *ītum*, or *avi* and *ātum*.

1. *Accenseo*, to reckon with, and *percenseo*, to recount, want the Supine; *recenseo*, to review, has *recensum* and *recensītum*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Ardeo,	arsī,	arsum,	<i>to burn.</i>
Audeo,	ausus sum,	ausum,	<i>to dare.</i>
Augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	<i>to increase.</i>
Calveo,	calvi,	—	<i>to grow bald.</i>
Cāveo,	cāvi,	cautum,	<i>to take care.</i>
Censeo,	censui,	censum,	<i>to think.</i>
Cieo, ²	cīvi,	cītum,	{ <i>to stir up.</i> (con, ex, per.)
Compleo, ³	complēvi,	complētum,	
Connīveo,	{ connīvi, connixi,	{ —	<i>to wink.</i>
Dōceo,	docui,	doctum,	<i>to teach.</i> (e, per, de.)
Dēleo,	delēvi,	delētum,	<i>to blot out.</i>
Fāveo,	fāvi,	fautum,	<i>to favour.</i>
Ferveo,	{ ferveo & ferbui from ferbeo,	{ —	<i>to boil.</i>
Fleo,	flēvi,	fletum,	<i>to weep.</i> (de.)
Fōveo,	fōvi,	fōtum,	<i>to cherish.</i>
Freudeo,	{ frendui, frendi,	{ fressum,	<i>to gnash the teeth.</i>
Frigeo,	frixi,	—	<i>to be cold.</i> (re.)
Fulgeo,	fulsi,	—	<i>to shine.</i> (af, ef, re.)
Gaudeo,	gāvīsus sum,	—	<i>to rejoice.</i>
Hæreo,	hæsi,	hæsum,	<i>to stick.</i> (ad, co, in.)
Indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	<i>to indulge.</i>
Jūbeo,	jussi,	jussum,	<i>to order.</i>
Lūceo,	luxi,	—	{ <i>to shine.</i> (di, e, per, præ.)
Lūgeo,	luxi,	—	
Māneo,	mansi,	mansum,	<i>to remain.</i> (per, re.)
Misceo,	miscui,	{ mistum, mixtum,	{ <i>to mix.</i> (ad, com, im, per.)
Mordeo,	momordi,	morsum,	
Admordeo,	admordi,	admorsum,	<i>to bite hard.</i>
Mōveo, ⁴	mōvi,	mōtum,	{ <i>to move.</i> (a, com, per, &c.)

2. *Cīvi* is the Perfect of the obsolete verb *cīo* of the Fourth Conjugation, and *cītum* the Supine. The compounds in the sense of *calling*, are generally conjugated according to the Fourth Conjugation; as *excīo*, *excītum*.

3. The other compounds of the obsolete *pleo* are conjugated in the same manner.

4. Verbs in *veo* undergo a contraction in the Perfect and Supine; as *caveo*, *cavi*, *cāutum*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	<i>to stroke.</i> (de, per.)
Mulgeo,	mulsi,	{ mulsum, mulctum,	{ <i>to milk.</i>
Neo,	nēvi,	nētum,	<i>to spin.</i>
Oleo,	olui,	_____	<i>to smell.</i>

Its compounds, signifying *to smell*, have *ui, itum*; as

Obōleo,	ōbōlui,	obōlītum,	{ <i>to smell strong.</i> (per, red, sub.)
Exōleo, ⁵	exolēvi,	exolētum,	<i>to fade—grow old.</i>
Adōleo,	adolēvi,	adultum,	{ <i>to grow up—to burn</i> <i>in sacrifice.</i>
Pāveo,	pāvi,	_____	<i>to be afraid.</i>
Pendeo,	pependi,	pensum,	<i>to hang.</i>
Dependeo,	dependi,	dependsum,	<i>to hang from.</i> (im.)
Prandeo, ⁶	prandi,	pransum,	<i>to dine.</i>
Rīdeo,	rīsi,	risum,	{ <i>to laugh.</i> (ar, de, ir, &c.)
Sēdeo, ⁷	sēdi,	sessum,	<i>to sit.</i>

Its compounds change *e* of the simple into *i*;—as

Assīdeo,	assēdi,	assessum,	{ <i>to sit by or at.</i> (cir- cum, ob.)
Sorbeo, ⁸	sorbui,	sorptum,	<i>to sup up.</i>
Sōleo,	solītus sum,	_____	<i>am wont.</i>
Spondeo,	{ spospondi, spopondi,	{ sponsum,	<i>to promise.</i>
Respondeo,	respondi,	responsum,	<i>to answer.</i> (de.)
Strideo,	stridi,	_____	{ <i>to make a noise—</i> <i>hiss.</i>
Suadeo,	suasi,	suasum,	{ <i>to persuade.</i> (dis, per.)
Tēneo, ⁹	tenui,	tentum,	<i>to hold.</i>

Its compounds change *e* into *i*; as

Abstīneo,	abstinui,	abstentum,	<i>to abstain from.</i>
-----------	-----------	------------	-------------------------

5. *Exoleo* and *adoleo* come from *olere*, (not in use) to grow; so also *obōleo*, *obolēvi*, *obolētum*, to grow out of use; *inōleo*, *inolēvi*, *inolētum* or *inolūtum*, to come into use; *abolēo*, to abolish, *abolēvi*, *abolētum*.

6. *Pransus* is used in the active sense of *having dined*.

7. *Desideo*, *disideo*, *persideo*, *prasideo*, *resideo*, and *subideo*, have no Supine.

8. *Absorbeo*, to sup up, and *exsorbeo*, to sup out, have sometimes *absorpsi* and *exsorpsi* in the Perfect; *exsorbeo* and *resorbeo* have no Supine.

9. *Pertineo* and *sustineo* have no Supine.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Timeo,	timui,	_____	<i>to fear.</i>
Tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	<i>to wipe.</i>
Tondeo,	totondi,	tonsum,	<i>to clip.</i>
Attondeo,	attondi,	attonsum,	<i>to clip. (de.)</i>
Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	{ <i>to twist. (con, dis,</i>
			<i>ex.)</i>
Torreo,	torrui,	tostum,	<i>to toast.</i>
Turgeo,	tursi,	_____	<i>to swell.</i>
Urgeo,	ursi,	_____	<i>to urge.</i>
Video,	vīdi,	vīsum,	{ <i>to see. (in, per, præ,</i>
			<i>pro.)</i>
Vieo,	viēvi,	viētum,	<i>to hoop a vessel.</i>
Vōveo,	vōvi,	vōtum,	<i>to vow.</i>

Neuter Verbs in *veo* have no Supine; as *pāveo*, *pāvi*, to be afraid.

Also Neuter Verbs which have *ui* in the Perfect, have no Supine; as *splendeo*, *splendui*, to shine. But the following Neuter Verbs have *ui* and *itum*, according to the general rule:

Cāreo, <i>to want.</i>	Mēreo, <i>to deserve.</i>
Coāleo, <i>to grow together.</i>	Nōceo, <i>to hurt.</i>
Dōleo, <i>to grieve.</i>	Pāreo, <i>to appear.</i>
Jāceo, <i>to lie.</i>	Plāceo, <i>to please.</i>
Lāteo, ¹ <i>to lie hid.</i>	Tāceo, ² <i>to be silent.</i>
Līceo, <i>to be valued.</i>	Vāleo, <i>to be in health.</i>

The following have neither Perfect nor Supine:

Aveo, <i>to desire.</i>	Lacteo, <i>to grow milky.</i>
Denseo, <i>to grow thick.</i>	Līveo, <i>to be black and blue.</i>
Flacceo, <i>to fade.</i>	Mæreo, <i>to be sorrowful.</i>
Flāveo, <i>to be yellow.</i>	Renīdeo, <i>to shine.</i>
Glabreo, <i>to be smooth.</i>	Polleo, <i>to be powerful.</i>
Hēbeo, <i>to be blunt.</i>	Scāteo, <i>to flow out.</i>

1. *Delīteo*, to lurk, and *perīāteo*, to lie hid, compounds of *lateo*, have the Perfect *ui*, but no Supine.

2. *Conticeo*, *reticeo*, make *ui* in the Perfect, but have no Supine.

THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Bo is changed into *psi, ptum*; as *Scribo, scripsi, scriptum*, to write.

So *Glubo*, to peel; *Nubo*,¹ to marry; *carpo*, to pluck; *repto*, to creep; *scalpo*, to scratch; *sculpo*, to work with a chisel; *serpo*, to creep.

EXCEPTIONS.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Accumbo, ² from <i>cubo</i> , <i>cubāre</i> ,	} accūbui,	accūbītum,	{ to lie down. (im, pro, suc, oc.)
Bībo,		bībitum,	
Lambo,		————	to lick.
Rumpo,		ruptum,	to break. (ab, e, cor.)
Scābo,		————	to scratch.
Strēpo,		strepītum,	to make a noise.

Co is changed into *xi, ctum*; as *Dico, dixi, dictum*, to say.
Duco, duxi, ductum, to lead.

EXCEPTIONS.

Ico,	īci,	ictum,	to strike.
Parco,	{ pepercī, parsī,*	{ parsum, parsītum,*	{ to spare.
Vinco,	vīci,	victum,	to conquer.

Sco is changed into *vi, tum*; as *Nosco, nōvi, nōtum*, to know.

EXCEPTIONS.

Agnosco,	agnōvi,	agnītum,	to own. (cog.) but
Dignosco,	dignōvi,	dignōtum,	{ to discern. (ig, inter, per, prae.)
Compesco,	compescui,	————	to restrain.
Disco,	dīdīci,	————	to learn.
Addisco,	addīdīci,	————	to learn more.
Dispesco,	dispescui,	————	to divide.
Pasco,	pāvi,	pastum,	to feed.
Posco,	poposci,	————	to require.
Deposco,	depoposci,	————	to demand.
Quinisco,	quexi,	————	to nod.

1. *Nupta sum* is sometimes used instead of *nupsi*.

2. So *incumbo, procumbo, succumbo, occumbo*.

* *Parsi* and *parsītum* are seldom used.

Do is changed into *di, sum*; as *Scando, scandi, scansum*, to climb.

So *accendo*, to light, and its compounds, *cudo*, to forge, *defendo*, to defend, *mando*, to chew, *offendo*, to offend, *prehendo*, to seize, *scando*, to climb, and the compounds of these.

EXCEPTIONS.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Abdo, ³	abdīdi,	abdītum,	to hide.
Abscondo,	{ abscondi, abscondidi,	{ abscondītum,	to hide.
Addo,	addīdi,	addītum,	to add.
Cādo,	cecīdi,	cāsum,	to fall.

Its compounds change *a* into *i*; as

Incīdo, ⁴	incīdi,	incāsum,	to fall into. (oc, re.)
Cædo,	cecīdi,	cæsum,	to cut.

Its compounds change *æ* into *i*; as

Concīdo,	concīdi,	concīsum,	{ to cut in pieces. (abs, in, oc, de, &c.)
Cēdo,	cessi,	cessum,	{ to yield. (abs, ac, ante, &c.)
Claudo,	clausi,	clausum,	to close.

Its compounds change *au* into *u*; as

Conclūdo,	conclūsi,	conclūsum,	{ to conclude—to shut up. (ex, in, re, se.)
Comedo,	comēdi,	{ comesum, comestum	{ to eat.
Condo,	condīdi,	condītum,	to lay up.
Crēdo,	credīdi,	credītum,	to believe.
Accrēdo,	accrēdidi,	accrēdītum,	{ to give credit to. (con.)
Dēdo,	dedīdi,	dedītum,	to submit.
Dīdo,	didīdi,	didītum,	to give out.
Divīdo,	divīsi,	divisum,	to divide.
Ēdo,	edīdi,	edītum,	{ to put forth—to publish.
Ĕdo,	ēdi,	{ esum (or es- tum,)	{ to eat. (ex, com.)
Fido,	fisus sum,	_____	to trust. (con, dif.)

3. So *Abcondo, addo, condo, credo, dedo, dido, edo, indo, obdo, perdo, prodo, reddo, subdo, trado, vendo*, make *dīdi, dītum*.

4. *Incido, occido*, and *recido*, make *cīdi, cāsum*; the other compounds of *cado* have no Supine.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Findo,	fīdi,	fissum,	<i>to split. (dif.)</i>
Frendo,	frendi,	{ fressum and fresum,	<i>to gnash with the teeth.</i>
Fundo,	fūdi,	fūsum,	<i>to pour forth.</i>
Indo,	indīdi,	inditum,	<i>to put in.</i>
Lædo,	læsi,	læsum,	<i>to hurt.</i>

Its compounds change *æ* into *i*; as

Allido,	allīsi,	allisum,	{ <i>to dash against. (il, col, e.)</i>
Lūdo,	lūsi,	lūsum,	{ <i>to sport. (al, col, de, il.)</i>
Obdo,	obdidi,	obditum,	<i>to oppose.</i>
Pando, ⁵	pandi,	{ passum, (pansum, rarely,)	<i>to shew.</i>
Pendo,	pependi,	pensum,	<i>to weigh.</i>

Its compounds lose the reduplication; as

Appendo,	appendi,	appensum,	{ <i>to weigh out to. (ex, im, per, de, sus.)</i>
Perdo,	perdīdi,	perditum,	<i>to lose.</i>
Deperdo,	deperdīdi,	deperditum,	<i>to lose.</i>
Plaudo,	plausi,	plausum,	<i>to clap.</i>

The compounds of *plaudo*, except *applaudo* and *circumplaudo*, change *au* into *o*; as

Explōdo,	explōsi,	explōsum,	{ <i>to explode. (com, sup.)</i>
Prodo,	prodīdi,	proditum,	<i>to betray.</i>
Rādo,	rāsi,	rāsum,	{ <i>to shave. (ab, circum, cor, de, &c.)</i>
Reddo,	reddīdi,	redditum,	<i>to render.</i>
Rōdo,	rōsi,	rōsum,	{ <i>to gnaw. (ab, ar, de, &c.)</i>
Rūdo,	rudi,	—	<i>to bray as an ass.</i>
Scindo,	scīdi,	scissum,	{ <i>to cut. (ab, ex, per, re.)</i>
Sido,	sīdi,	—	<i>to sink down.</i>

Its compounds make *ēdi*, *essum*; as

Consīdo,	consēdi,	consessum,	{ <i>to sit down. (as, de, re, sub.)</i>
----------	----------	------------	--

5. *Expando* has *expansum* and *expassum*; *dispando* only *dispansum*.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Strīdo,	strīdi,	_____	to creak—whiz.
Subdo,	subdīdi,	subdītum,	to put under.
Tendo, ⁶	tetendi,	{ tensum, tentum,	} to stretch.

Its compounds lose the reduplication; as

Contendo,	contendi,	contentum,	{ to stretch—to labour (dis, in, ob, &c.)
Trādo,	trādīdi,	trādītum,	to deliver.
Trūdo,	trūsi,	trūsum,	{ to thrust. (de, ex, pro.)
Tundo,	tūtūdi,	{ tunsum, tūsum,	} to beat—pound.

Its compounds have *tūdi*, *tūsum*; as

Contundo,	contūdi,	contūsum,	{ to beat—bruise. (ex, ob, re.)
Vādo,	_____	_____	to go.

Its compounds have *vasi*, *vasum*, in the perfect and supine; as

Invādo,	invāsi,	invāsum,	{ to go to—to attack. (e, per.)
Vendo,	vendīdi,	vendītum,	to sell.

Go and *Guo* are changed into *xi*, *ctum*; as *Rego*, *rexī*, *rectum*, to rule; *Cingo*, *cinxi*, *cinctum*, to gird, surround,—and its compounds.

So *Affligo*, to strike to the ground; *confligo*, to fight; *inffligo*, to strike upon; *fungo*, to join; *lingo*, to lick; *mungo*, to blow the nose; *plango*, to beat, lament; *rego*, to rule,—the compounds of *rego*, *arrigo*, &c.—*sūgo*, to suck; *tēgo*, to cover; *tingo* or *tinguo*, to dip, dye; *unguo*, to anoint; *extinguo*, *restringuo*, and *distinguo*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Ago, ⁷	ēgi,	actum,	to drive.
Ango,	anxi,	_____	to vex.
Arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	to show—to prove.
Clango,	_____	_____	to sound a trumpet.
Cōgo,	coēgi,	coactum,	to drive together.
Dēgo,	dēgi,	_____	to lead—spend.
Figo,	fixi,	fixum,	to fasten.

6. The compounds of *tendo* have generally *tentum* in the Supine, except *astendo* and *ostendo*, which have both *tensum* and *tentum*.

7. *Circumāgo*, *perago*, *satago*, and *cōgo*, (contracted into *cogo*) retain the *a*; the other compounds change *a* into *i*; as *abigo*, *adigo*, *exigo*, *subigo*. *Dego*, (for *deago*), *prodigo*, and *satago*, have no Supine. *Amīgo*, to doubt, has neither Perfect nor Supine.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	<i>to feign.</i>
Frango,	frēgi,	fractum,	<i>to break.</i>

Its compounds change *a* into *i*; as

Confringo,	confrēgi,	confractum,	{ <i>to break to pieces.</i> (per, ef, re.)
Frigo,	frixi,	{ frictum, frixum,	{ <i>to roast—fry.</i>
Ico,	ici,	ictum,	<i>to strike.</i>
Lēgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	<i>to gather—to read.</i>

Its compounds *perlēgo*, *prælēgo*, *colligo*, *deligo*, *eligo*, and *seligo*, have *lēgi*, *lectum*; but *diligo*, *intelligo*, and *negligo*, have *lexi*, *lectum*.

Mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	<i>to dip.</i> (de, e, im, sub.)
Ningo,	ninxi,	————	<i>to snow.</i>
Pango,	panxi,	panctum,	<i>to drive in—strike.</i>
Pango, ⁸	pepīgi,	pactum,	<i>to bargain.</i>

Its compounds have *pēgi*, *pactum*, and change *a* into *i*; as

Compingo,	compēgi,	compactum,	{ <i>to fasten together.</i> (im, op.)
Pergo,	perrexi,	perrectum,	<i>to go forward.</i>
Pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	<i>to paint.</i>
Pungo,	pupūgi,	punctum,	<i>to pierce.</i>

Its compounds have *punxi* in the Perfect; as

Compungo,	compunxi,	compunctum,	<i>to sting.</i> (dis, inter.)
Repungo,	{ repupūgi, repunxi,	{ repunctum,	<i>to pierce again.</i>
Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	<i>to scatter.</i>

Its compounds change *a* into *e*; as

Aspergo,	aspersi,	aspersum,	{ <i>to besprinkle.</i> (con. re, ex.)
Stringo,	strinxi,	strictum,	<i>to squeeze together.</i>
Surgo,	surrexi,	surrectum,	<i>to rise.</i>
Tango,	tetīgi,	tactum,	<i>to touch.</i>

Its compounds change *a* into *i*, and drop the reduplication; as

Attingo,	attīgi,	attactum,	<i>to touch.</i> (con, ob.)
Tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	<i>to wipe.</i>
Vergo,	————	————	<i>to lie towards.</i>

8. The Present of *pango* is rarely used in the sense of *bargain*, but *pactior* is employed instead of it. *Depango* and *repango* have neither Perfect nor Supine.

Ho is changed into *xi, ctum*; as *Trāho, traxi, tractum*, to draw, to drag; so *Veho, vaxi, vectum*, to carry.

Io is various; as

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Aspicio,	aspexi,	aspectum,	{ to behold. (con, de, &c.)
{ Allicio,	allexi,	allectum,	{ to allure. (II, pel.)
{ Elicio,	elicui,	elicitum,	{ to draw out.
Cāpio,	cēpi,	captum,	to take hold of.

Its compounds change *a* into *i*; as

Accipio,	accēpi,	acceptum,	{ to receive. (de, ex, per, præ, re, sus.)
Cūpio,	cupīvi,	cupitum,	{ to desire. (con, dis, per.)
Fācio, ⁹	fēci,	factum,	to do—to make.

So *arefacio, consuefacio, frigefacio, labefacio, patefacio, tepefacio*. But *facio*, compounded with a preposition, changes *a* into *i*; as

Afficio,	affēci,	affectum,	to affect.
Fōdio,	fōdi,	fossum,	to dig.
Fūgio,	fūgi,	fūgitum,	to flee.
Jācio,	jēci,	jactum,	to throw.

The compounds of *jacio* change *a* into *i*; as

Abjicio,	abjēci,	abjectum,	{ to throw away. (ab, ad, de, &c.)
Pārio,	pēperi,	{ partum, paritum,	{ to bring forth.

Its compounds change *a* into *e*, and belong to the Fourth Conjugation.

Quātio,	quassi,	quassum,	to shake.
---------	---------	----------	-----------

Its compounds change *quatio* into *cūtio*; as

Concūtio,	concussi,	concussum,	{ to shake violently. (dis, ex, per.)
Rāpio,	rāpui,	raptum,	to snatch.

Its compounds change *a* into *i*; as

Arrīpio,	arrīpui,	arreptum,	{ to seize. (ab, er, de, sub.)
----------	----------	-----------	--------------------------------

9. The compounds of *facio*, which retain *a*, have *fo* in the Passive; as *patefacio, patefo, patefactus sum, patefieri*. But those which change *a* into *i* form their own Passive in *scior*; as *affscior*.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Săpio,	săpui,	_____	to be wise—to taste.

Its compounds change *a* into *i*; as

Desăpio,	desăpui,	_____	to be foolish. (re.)
----------	----------	-------	----------------------

Lo is changed into *lui*, *litum*; as *Mölo*, *mölui*, *molitum*, to grind. *Alo*, to nourish, has *ălitum* and *altum* in the Supine.

EXCEPTIONS.

Antecello,	antecellui,	_____	{ to excel. (ex, præ.) but
Percello,	percüli,	perculsum,	to thrust aside.
Cölo, ¹⁰	colui,	cultum,	to till.
Consölo,	consölui,	consultum,	to consult.
Fallo,	fefelli,	falsum,	to cheat.
Refello,	refelli,	_____	to confute.
Occölo,	occölui,	occultum,	to hide.
Pello,	pepüli,	pulsum,	to drive away.

Its compounds drop the reduplication; as

Compello,	compüli,	compulsum,	{ to compel. (ap, de, ex, pro, &c.)
Psallo,	psalli,	_____	{ to sing, or play on an instrument.
Sallo,	salli,	salsum,	to salt.
Tollo,	sustüli,	sublätum,	to lift up.
Attollo, ¹¹	attuli,	allätum,	to raise up.
Extollo, ¹¹	extuli,	elatum,	to lift up—to praise.
Vello,	velli & vulsi,	vulsum,	to pluck out. (a, re.)
Convello,	velli,	vulsum,	to tear up. (di, e.)

Mo is changed into *mui*, *mütum*; as *Fremo*, *fremui*, *fremütum*, to murmur.

So *gömo*, to groan, (*congömo* and *ingömo* have no Supine;) *vömo*, to vomit.

EXCEPTIONS.

Cömo,	compsi,	comptum,	to adorn.
Dömo,	dempsi,	demptum,	to take away.
Emo,	ëmi,	emptum,	to buy.

10. *Accölo* and *circumcölo* have no Supine.

11. *Attollo* and *extollo* have no Perfect nor Supine of their own, but take the Perfect and Supine of *affero* and *effero*.

The compounds of *emo*, except *demo*, *promo*, *sumo*, change *e* of the Simple into *i*; as

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Adīmo,	adēmi,	ademptum,	{ to take away. (dir, ex, &c.)
Prēmo,	pressi,	pressum,	{ to press.

The compounds of *prēmo* change *e* into *i*; as

Opprīmo,	oppressi,	oppressum,	{ to press down. (com, de, &c.)
Prōmo,	prompsi,	promptum,	{ to bring out. (de, ex.)
Sūmo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	{ to take. (ab, ad, con, &c.)
Trēmo,	tremui,	—	{ to tremble.

No.

Cāno,	cecīni,	cantum,	to sing.
-------	---------	---------	----------

Its compounds change *a* into *i*, and make *cinui*, *centum*; as
Succīno, succinui, succentum, to sing to.

Of *accīno* and *intercīno*, neither Perfect nor Supine is to be found.

Cerno, ¹²	—	—	to separate—see.
Cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	to sift—resolve.
Decerno,	decrēvi,	decrētum,	{ to decree. (dis, ex, se.)
Gigno,	gēnūi,	gēnītum,	to beget. (in, pro.)
Līno,	lēvi, līvi,	lītum,	{ to smear. (col, il, per, ob.)
Pōno,	pōsui,	posītum,	{ to place. (ante, ap, com, &c.)
Sīno,	sīvi,	sītum,	to allow.
Desīno,	desii,	desītum,	to cease.
Sperno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	to despise.
Sterno, ¹³	stravi,	stratum,	{ to stretch on the ground. (in, re.)
Temno,	—	—	to despise. but
Contemno,	contempsi,	contemptum,	to despise.

12. *Cerno* has neither Perfect nor Supine in the sense of *see, perceive*; but the Perfect *crēvi* is used in the sense of "entering upon an inheritance."

13. *Consterno* and *esterno*, when they signify to *alarm*, are of the First Conjugation. The other compounds are conjugated like *sterno*.

Po is changed into *psi, ptum*; as *Carpo, carpsi, carptum*, to pluck.

So the compounds of *carpo, concerpo, &c.*; *clāpo*, to steal; *repo*, to creep; *scalpo*, to scratch; *sculpo*, to work with the chisel; *serpo*, to creep,—and the compounds of these words.

EXCEPTIONS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Rumpo,	rūpi,	ruptum,	{ <i>to break—tear.</i> (al, e, con, &c.) <i>to make a noise.</i> (ob.)
Strēpo,	strēpui,	strēpītum,	
<i>Quo.</i>			
Cōquo,	coxi,	coctum,	<i>to dress.</i> (con, de.)
Linqo,	liqui,	—	<i>to leave.</i>
Relinqo,	reliqui,	relictum,	{ <i>to leave behind.</i> (dere, de.)

Ro is changed into *ssi, stum*; as *Gēro, gessi, gestum*, to carry.

So *uro*, to burn, and its compounds, *aduro, comburo, &c.*

EXCEPTIONS.

Curro,	cucurri,	cursum,	<i>to run.</i>
--------	----------	---------	----------------

Ac, con, de, ex, in, per, præ, pro-curro, sometimes have, and sometimes have not the reduplication in the Perfect; *circum, re, suc, trans-curro*, are without it.

Fēro,	tūli,	lātum,	{ <i>to bear.</i> (ante, cir- cum, de, per, post, præ, pro, re, trans.)
Affēro,	attūli,	allātum,	
Aufēro,	abstuli,	ablatum,	<i>to bring.</i>
Confēro,	contuli,	collatum,	<i>to take away.</i>
Diffēro,	distuli,	dilatam,	<i>to compare together.</i>
Effēro,	extuli,	elatum,	<i>to scatter abroad.</i>
Offēro,	obtuli,	oblatum,	<i>to bring out.</i>
Suffēro,	sustuli,	sublatum,	<i>to bring to.</i>
Fūro,	—	—	<i>to lift up.</i>
Quæro,	quæsi,	quæsītum,	<i>to rage.</i>
			<i>to seek.</i>

It changes *æ* into *i* in the compounds; as

Acquīro,	acquisīvi,	acquisītum,	{ <i>to acquire.</i> (con, ex, in, per.)
Sēro,	sēvi,	sātum,	
Consēro,	consēvi,	consītum,	<i>to sow.</i>
			<i>to sow.</i> (insero.)

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Conséro,	consērui,	consertum,	{ to join. (de, dis, ex, in.)
Téro,	trīvi,	trītum,	to rub. (at, con.)
Verro,	verri,	versum,	to brush.

So is changed into *sivi, sītum*; as *Arcesso, arcessivi, arcessitum*, to summon.

So also *capesso*, to undertake; *facesso*, to give trouble; *laccio*, to provoke.

EXCEPTIONS.

Depso,	depsui,	{ depsītum, depstum,	{ to knead.
Incesso,	{ incesi, incessīvi,	{ ———	to go—attack.
Pinso,	pinsui et pinsi,	{ pinsītum, pinsum, or pistum,	{ to grind—to pound.
Viso,	vīsi,	visum,	{ to go to visit. (re, in.)
<i>To.</i>			
Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	to bend. (in, de, re.)
Mēto,	messui,	messum,	to reap.
Mitto,	mīsi,	missum,	{ to send. (a, ad, com, &c.)
Necto,	nexi & nexui,	nexum,	{ to bind—knit. (an, con.)
Pecto,	pexi & pexui,	pexum,	to comb. (de.)
Pēto,	petivi, petii,	petitum,	{ to ask—seek. (ap, ex, op, re.)
Plecto, ¹⁴	plexi & plexui,	plexum,	to twist.
Sisto,	stīti,	stātum,	to stop.
Subsisto,	substīti,	substītum,	{ to stand still. (ab, ad, de, &c.)
Sterto,	stertui or ti,	———	to snore.
Verto, ¹⁵	verti,	versum,	{ to turn. (a, ad, con, e, sub, &c.)

Uo is changed into *ui, ūtum*; as *Tribuo, tribui, tribūtum*, to grant—bestow.

So also *acuo*, to sharpen; *batuo*, to beat; *exuo*, to put off clothes; *imbuo*, to moisten—to wet; *induo*, to put on clothes; *minuo*, to lessen; *spuo*, to spit; *stātuo*, to set—to place; *sternuo*, to sneeze; *suo*, to stitch.

14. This Verb is considered by Zumpt as obsolete, but is admitted by Scheller and Adams.

15. *Diverto*, *prævertor*, and *revertor*, compounds of *verto*, are Deponents.

EXCEPTIONS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Fluo,	fluxi,	fluxum,	{ to flow. (af, con, ef, &c.)
Luo,	lui,	(luitum, seldom)	to pay—to wash.

Its compounds have *ūtum* in the Supine; as

Abluo,	ablui,	ablūtum,	to wash away.
Ruo,	ruī,	ruītum, rūtum,	to rush—to fall.

Its compounds have *ūtum*; as

Diruo,	dirui,	dirūtum,	{ to overthrow. (ir, ob, pro.)
Struo,	struxi,	structum,	{ to build—to pile. (con, de, ex, in.)
Annuo,	annui,	_____	{ to assent. (ab, in, re.)
Congruo,	congrui,	_____	to agree.
Ingruo,	ingrui,	_____	to assail.
Mētuo,	metui,	_____	to fear.
Pluo,	plui,	_____	to rain.

Vo is changed into *vi*, *ūtum*; as *Volvo*, *volvi*, *volūtum*, to roll; *solvo*, *solvi*, *solūtum*, to loose; and their compounds.

Except *Vivo*, *vixi*, *victum*, to live.

Xo is changed into *ui*, *tum*; as *Texo*, *texui*, *textum*, to weave.



THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The Fourth Conjugation makes *īvi*, *ītum*; as *Audio*, *audīvi*, *audītum*, to hear.

EXCEPTIONS.

Amīcio,	{ amīcui, amīxi,	} amictum,	to clothe.
Apērio,	apēruī,	apertum,	{ to open. (opērio, co- opērio.)
Compērio,	compēri,	compertum,	to discover. (re.)
Cambio,	campsi,	campsum,	{ to change money. (very rare.)
Eo,	īvi,	ītum,	{ to go. (ad, ab, cir- cum, &c.)

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Farcio,	farsi,	{ fartum and farsum,	} to stuff.

Its compounds change *a* into *e*; as

Confercio,	confersi,	confertum,	to fill up. (ef, in, re.)
Fërio,	{ wants the Perfect and Supine; instead of the Perfect, <i>percussi</i> is used for the Active Per- fect, and <i>ictus sum</i> generally for the Passive.		
Fulcio,	fulsi,	fultum,	to prop.
Haurio,	hausi,	{ haustum, hausum,	} to draw.
Queo,	quïvi or quii,	quïtum,	may—can.
Raucio,	rausi,	rausum,	to be hoarse.
Sãlio,	salui and salii,	saltum,	to spring.

Its compounds change *a* into *i*; as

Desflio, ¹	{ desilui, desilii,	{ desultum,	to spring forth.
Sancio,	{ sancïvi, sanxi, sancii,	{ sancitum, and sanctum,	} to decree—sanction.
Sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	to patch. (re.)
Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	{ to feel—think. (con, dis, præ.)
Sepëlio,	sepelivi,	sepultum,	to bury.
Sëpio,	sepsi,	septum,	to enclose—hedge in.
Singultio,	singultïvi,	singultum,	to sob—hiccup.
Vëneo,	venii,	_____	to be sold.
Vënio,	vëni,	ventum,	{ to come. (ad, con, ob, in, per.)
Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	to bind. (de.)

The following Verbs have the Perfect formed regularly, but want the Supine:

Cæcütio, ïvi, to be dim-sighted.	Gestio, ïvi, to show signs of joy by the gestures of the body.
Dementio, ïvi, to be mad.	Glôcio, to cluck as a hen.
Ferôcio, ïvi, to be fierce.	Ineptio, to play the fool.

Desiderative Verbs in *urio*, as *cænaturio*, have neither Perfect nor Supine, except *esurio* and *parturio*, which have *esurïvi* and *parturïvi*, but no Supine.

1. *Desillo*, *exsilio*, and *insilio*, have, according to Zumpt, no Supine.

DEPONENT VERBS.

The Perfect of a Deponent Verb is formed in the same manner as if the Supine of the Active Voice existed, by changing *um* into *us*; thus *gratulor*, *gratulatus sum*, as if from *gratulo*, *gratulāvi*, *gratulātum*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Făteor,	fassus sum,	to confess.
Its compounds change <i>a</i> into <i>i</i> ; as		
Confiteor,	confessus sum,	to confess. (pro.)
Diffiteor,	————	to deny.
Medeor, ¹	————	to heal.
Misereor,	{ miseritus sum, misertus sum,	} to pity.
Reor,	rătus sum,	{ to think. (No Potential Mood.)

EXCEPTIONS IN THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Apiscor,	aptus sum,	to get.
Adipiscor,	adeptus sum,	to obtain.
Comminiscor,	commentus sum,	to devise.
Expergiscor,	experrectus sum,	to awake.
Fruor,	fructus and fructus,	to enjoy.
Grădior,	gressus sum,	to proceed.
Its compounds change <i>a</i> into <i>e</i> ; as		
Aggrēdior,	aggressus sum,	to go to—to accost.
Irascor, ²	iratus sum,	to be angry.
Lăbor,	lapsus sum,	to fall.
Lăquor,	{ locūtus loquutus } sum,	to speak.
Mōrior,	mortuus sum,	{ to die. (in the Future Participle it makes moritūrus.)
Nanciscor,	nactus sum,	to get.
Nascor,	nātus sum,	{ to be born. (Participle Future, nascitūrus.)
Nītor, ³	{ nisus or nixus sum,	{ to endeavour—to lean upon.
Obliviscor,	oblītus sum,	to forget.

1. *Medicātus* is used as the Participle of *medeor*.

2. I have been angry or was angry, is generally rendered by *succensus*.

3. *Entor*, in the sense of to bring forth, has *emisa* in the Participle.

Orior, ⁴	ortus sum,	{ to rise. (Participle Future, <i>oritūrus.</i>)
Paciscor,	pactus sum,	to bargain.
Pātior,	passus sum,	to suffer.
Perpetior,	perpessus sum,	to endure.
Proficiscor,	profectus sum,	to go—to travel.
Quēror,	questus sum,	to complain.
Sēquor,	{ secūtus sum,	} to follow.
	{ sequutus sum,	
Ulciscor,	ultus sum,	to revenge—to punish.
Utor,	usus sum,	to use.

The following Verbs want the Perfect Tense:

Defetiscor, to be weary.	Ringor, to grin—to shew the teeth.
Līquor, to melt.	Vescor, to feed.
Reminiscor, to remember.	

EXCEPTIONS IN THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Experior,	expertus sum,	to try.
Mētor,	mensus sum,	to measure. (di, e, per.)
Opperior,	oppertus sum,	to wait for.
Ordior,	orsus sum,	to begin.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Redundant Verbs are those which have different forms to express the same sense; as *assentio* and *assentior*, to agree.

1. Some Verbs are usually of the First Conjugation, and rarely of the Third; as

Lavo, lavas, lavāre,	{ and {	lavo, lavas, lavāre, to wash.
Sono, sonas, sonāre,		sono, sonas, sonāre, to sound.

2. Some are usually of the Second, and rarely of the Third; as

Ferveo, ferves, fervēre,	{ and {	fervo, fervis, fervēre, to boil.
Fulgeo, fulges, fulgēre,		fulgo, fulgis, fulgēre, to shine.
Strideo, strides, stridēre,		strido, stridis, stridēre, to creak.
Tergeo, terges, tergēre,		tergo, tergis, tergēre, to wipe.
Tueor, tuēris, tuēri,		tuor, tuēris, tui, to defend.

3. Some are usually of the Third, and rarely of the Fourth; as

Arcesso, arcessis, arcessēre,	{ and {	arcessio, arcessis, arcessēre, to send for.
Fodio, fodis, fodēre,		fodio, fodis, fodēre, to dig.
Morior, morēris, mori,		morior, morēris, mori, to die.
Orior, orēris,		orior, orēris, oriri, to rise.
Potior, potēris,		potior, potēris, potiri, to obtain.
Sallo, sallis, sallere,		sallio, sallis, sallire, to salt.

NOTE.—*Orior* and *potior* are always of the Fourth Conjugation in the Infinitive.

4. There is one verb which is usually of the Second, and more rarely of the Fourth, namely, *cileo*, *cies*, *cīere*, and *cio*, *cis*, *cīre*, to stir up.

4. *Orior* has, in the Infinitive, *oriri*, and Imperf. Subj. *orirer*, according to the Fourth Conjugation. In the other Tenses, it generally follows the Third Conjugation.

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON COMPOUND VERBS.

In compound verbs the last consonant of the preposition is sometimes changed into the first of the simple verb; thus *ad-fero* becomes *affero*. Sometimes it is changed into a different letter, thus *ab-fero* is changed into *aufero*. Sometimes a letter is either added to the preposition, as *redeo* for *re-eo*; or taken from it, as *omitto* for *ob-mitto*.

The following simple verbs, when compounded, change their first vowel into *e*: *arceo*, *capto*, *carpo*, *damno*, *fallō*, *farciō*, *fatiscor*, *gradior*, *jactō*, *lactō*, *pario*, *partio*, *patior*, *patro*, *sacro*, *scando*, *spargo*, *tracto*. Yet we find *prædamno*, *desacro*, *per-tracto*.

These change the first vowel* into *i*: *cado*, *cædo*, *cano*, *ego*, *habeo*, *lædo*, *lateo*, *placeo*, *quæro*, *rapio*, *salio*, *sapio*, *statuo*, *taceo*, *tango*, *teneo*. But we find *com-per-placoo*; *post-ante-habeo*; *oc-re-cano* are sometimes found.

The following change it into *i* only in the Present Tense, and in those derived from it; *ago*, *apiacor*, *capio*, *emo*, *fateor*, *frango*, *jactio*, *pango*, *premo*, *rego*, *sedeo*, *specio*. Except *coemo*, *cogo*, (for *con-ago*) *dego*, (for *de-ago*) *circum-sat-per-ago*. *Antecapio* and *anticipio*, *superjacio* and *superficio*, are both used. *Circum-super-sedeo*; *de-ob-re-pango*. *Facio*, compounded with a preposition, changes *a* into *i*; as *afficio*, *interficio*. Such compounds have the Imperative in *e*, and form their Passive regularly, by adding *r* to *o*; but *facio*, when compounded with verbs, nouns, or adjectives, does not change the *a*, and generally has the Second Person of the Imperative in *c*, throwing away the *e*; and the Passive Voice is like *fiō*; as *calefacio*, *calefac*, *calefiō*. Some compounds, with nouns and adjectives, throw away the *i* which precedes *o*, and are of the First Conjugation; as *significo*, *lætifico*.

Legō, when compounded with *con*, *de*, *di*, *e*, *inter*, *nec*, *se*, changes *e* into *i*.

The compounds of *calco* and *salto* change *a* into *u*.

Those of *plaudo* change *au* into *o*, except *applaudo*.

Those of *causo*, *claudio*, *lavo*, throw away *a*; as *accuso*, *recludo*, *diluo*.

Those of *quatio* change *qua* into *cu*; as *percutio*.

Verbs which have Two Preterperfects.

Some verbs have both an active and a passive Preterperfect Tense; as *libet*, *libuit*, *libitum est*; so *licet*, *piget*, *videt*, *juro*, *nubo*, *placeo*, *sueco*.

Verbs which have no Supine.

These verbs have no Supine:

The compounds of *gruo* and *nuo*;

Those of *cado*, except *incido*, *occido*, *recido*;

Neuters in *veo*;

Neuters in *eo*, *ui*; except *caleo*, *careo*, *coaleo*, *doleo*, *jaceo*, *lateo*, *liceo*, *moreo*, *nocoo*, *oleo*, *pareo*, *placeo*, *taceo*, *valeo*, most of which are not found in the Supine, but in the Participle Future.

The rest are comprehended in these verses:

Algeo, cum sileo, sic frigeo, fulgeo, lugeo,
Urgeo, cum timeo, sic luceo, studeo, turgeo,
Ango, clango, luo, disco, compesco, quinesco,
Dego, lambo, mico, dispesco, posco, refello,
Incesso, metuo, ningo, cum prodigo, psallo,
Strido, scabo, pluo, sido, cum respuo, rudo,
Sterto, tremo, sapio, satago, cum veneo, viso,
Cœcûtit, glocio, dementio, gestit, ineptit,
His et prosilio, pariterque ferocio jungas.

Accoo in the simple, *lateo* and *taceo*, in their compounds, have no Supine.

The following have neither Perfect nor Supine:—Verbs in *sco*, that signify to *grow* or *begin*; verbs in *urio*, signifying *desire*; except *parturio*, *esurio*, and *nupturio*. Also,

Flaveo, cum scateo, liveo-que, renideo, polleo,
Nexo, aveo, denseo, glabreo, cum lacteo, mæreo,
Ambigo, sisto,† furo, ferio, labo, vergo, recello,
Divertor, plico, prævertor, liquet et reminiscor,
Diffiteor, ringor, medeor, vescor-que, liquor-que.

* Many of these observations have been mentioned under the different Conjugations.

† *Sisto*, neuter.

Verbs which borrow Tenses from others.

Inceptives in *scō* borrow their Perfects from their Primitives; as *tepesco, tepui*, from *tepeo*: their Supines also; as *abolesco, evi, itum*, from *aboleo*.

Ferio, percussi, percussus, from *percutio*;
Fero, tuli, latum, from *tulo*;
Furo, insanivi, insanitum, from *insanio*;
Meio, minxi, mictum, from *mingo*;
Sido, sedi, sessum, from *sedeo*;
Sum, fui, futurus, from *fuō*, (obsolete);
Tollo, sustuli, sublatus, from *suffero*;
Liquor, liquefactus sum, from *liqueflo*;
Medeor, medicatus sum, from *medicor*, (deponent);
Reminiscor, recordatus sum, from *recordor*;
Vescor, pastus sum, from *pascor*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Those Verbs are called *irregular*, whose Tenses are not all formed according to the Rules.

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS.

1. Possum, pōtui,	posse,	<i>to be able.</i>
2. Eo, īvi, Itum,	īre,	<i>to go.</i>
3. Vōlo, vōlui,	velle,	<i>to be willing.</i>
4. Nōlo, nōlui,	nolle,	<i>to be unwilling.</i>
5. Mālo, mālui,	malle,	<i>to be more willing.</i>
6. Edo, ēdi,	ēdēre vel esse,	<i>to eat.</i>
7. Fēro, tūli, lātum,	ferre,	<i>to bear.</i>
8. Fīo, factus sum vel fui, fieri,		<i>to become.</i>
9. Fēror, lātus sum vel fui, ferri,		<i>to be borne.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Possum,	pōtes,	pōtest,	pōssūmus,	pōtēstis,	possunt.
Eo,	is,	it,	īmus,	ītis,	eunt.
Vōlo	vis,	vult,	vōlūmus,	vultis,	volunt.
Nōlo,	nonvis,	nonvult,	nolūmus,	nonvultis,	nolunt.
Mālo,	mavis,	mavult,	mālūmus,	mavultis,	malunt.
Edo,	edis v. es,	edit v. est,	edīmus,	edītis v. estis,	edunt.
Fēro,	fers,	fert,	fērīmus,	fertis,	ferunt.
Fīo,	fis,	fit,	fīmus,	fītis,	fīunt.
Fēror, ferris, v. ferre,		fertur,	fērīmur,	ferimini,	feruntur.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pöt-eram,	eras,	erat,	erāmus,	erātis,	erant.
I-bam,	bas,	bat,	bāmus,	bātis,	bant.
Vol- Nol- Mal- Ed- Fer- Fi- }	ēbam, ēbas, ēbat,		ēbāmus,	ēbātis,	ēbant.
Fer-ēbar,	{ ēbāris v. ebāre, } ēbātur,		ēbāmur,	ēbāmini,	ēbantur.

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pöt-ēro,	ēris,	ērit,	ērīmus,	ērītis,	ērunt.
I-bo,	bis,	bit,	bīmus,	bītis,	bunt.
Vol- Nol- Mal- Ed- Fer- Fi- }	am, es, et,		ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
Fer-ar,	ēris v. ēre, ētur,		ēmur,	ēmini,	entur.

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Potu- Iv- Volu- Nolu- Malu- Ed- Tul- }	i, isti, it,		īmus,	istis,	ērunt v. ēre.
Fact-us }	sum	es est	i sumus	estis	sunt,
	vel	vel vel	vel	vel	fuērunt,
Lāt-us	fui,	fuisti, fuit,	fūīmus,	fuistis,	vel fuēre.

The Perfect of *eo* is frequently formed by rejecting the *v*, thus *ii* for *iōi*; so also its compounds, thus *redii* for *redioi*.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Potu- Iv- Volu- Nolu- Malu- Ed- Tul-	eram, eras, erat,	erāmus, erātis, erant.
Fact-us		
Lat-us		
	eram eras erat <i>vel vel vel</i>	i erāmus erātis erant <i>vel vel vel</i>
	fueram, fueras, fuerat.	fuerāmus, fuerātis, fuerant.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Potu- Iv- Volu- Nolu- Malu- Ed- Tul-	ēro, eris, erit,	ērīmus, ērītis, ērint.
Fact-us		
Lat-us		
	ero eris erit <i>vel vel vel</i>	i erīmus erītis erunt <i>vel vel vel</i>
	fuerō, fueris, fuerit,	fuerīmus, fuerītis, fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
I, īto,	īto,	īte, ītōte,
Nōlī, nōlīto,	—	nōlīte, nōlītōte,
Ede, ēdīto <i>vel</i> es,	{ ēdīto <i>vel</i> esto,	{ ēdīte, ēdītōte <i>vel</i> este, estote,
Fer, fertō,		
Fi, fīto,	fīto,	fīte, fītōte,
Ferre, fertor,	fertor,	fērīmini <i>vel</i> or,
		ēūnto.
		edunto.
		ferunto.
		fiunto.
		fēruntor.

Possūm, volo, and malo, are not found in the Imperative.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pos-sim,	sis,	sit,	sīmus,	sītis,	sint.
E-am,	as,	at,	āmus,	ātis,	ant.
Vēl-im,	} is,	it,	īmus,	ītis,	int.
Nōl-im,					
Māl-im,					
Ed-am,					
Fēr-am,	} as,	at,	āmus,	ātis,	ant.
Fī-am,					
Fēr-ar,					
	āris v. āre, ātur,		āmur,	āmīni,	antur.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pos-sem,	ses,	set,	sēmus,	sētis,	sent.
I-rem,	res,	ret,	rēmus,	rētis,	rent.
Vell-em,	} es,	et,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
Noll-em,					
Mall-em,					
Eder-em					
v. essem,					
Ferr-em,					
Fier-em,	rēris v. rēre, rētur,		rēmur,	rēmini,	rentur.
Fer-rer,					

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>			
Pötü- Iv- Völü- Nölü- Mälü- Ed- Tül- Fäct-us Lät-us	}	erim,	eris,	erit,	ērīmus,	ērītis,	ērint.
	}	sim	sis	sit	i sīmus	sītis	sint
		vel	vel	vel	vel	vel	vel
		füērim, fueris, fuerit,		füērīmus,	fuerītis,	fuerint.	

<i>Singular.</i>		PLUPERFECT TENSE.			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōtū-	}	issem, isses, isset,			issēmus, issētis, issent.		
Iv-							
Vōlū-							
Nōlū-							
Mālū-							
Ed-	}	essem esses esset			i essēmus essētis essent		
Tūl-							
Fact-us	}	essem esses esset			i essēmus essētis essent		
		<i>vel vel vel</i>			<i>vel vel vel</i>		
Lāt-us	}	fūissem, fuisses, fuisset,			fūissēmus, fuissētis, fuissent.		

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. AND IMPERF. TENSE.

1. Posse, *to be able.*
2. Ire, *to go.*
3. Velle, *to be willing.*
4. Nolle, *to be unwilling.*
5. Malle, *to be more willing.*
6. Edere *vel* esse, *to eat.*
7. Ferre, *to bear.*
8. Fieri, *to become.*
9. Ferri, *to be borne.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE.

1. _____
2. Itūrum esse, *to be about to go.*
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. Esūrum esse, *to be about to eat.*
7. Latūrum esse, *to be about to bear.*
8. Factum iri, *to be about to become.*
9. Latum iri, *to be about to be borne.*

Possum, volo, nolo, malo, have no Future Imperfect, nor Future Perfect Tense of the Infinitive.

GERUNDS.

1. _____
2. Eun-di, do, dum.
3. Volen-di, do, dum.
4. Nolen-di, do, dum.
5. Malen-di, do, dum.
6. Eden-di, do, dum.
7. Feren-di, do, dum.
8. _____
9. _____

PERF. AND PLUPERF.

1. Potuisse.
2. Ivisse.
3. Voluisse.
4. Noluisse.
5. Maluisse.
6. Edisse.
7. Tulisse.
8. Factum } esse *vel*
9. Latum } fuisse.

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. _____
2. Itūrum fuisse.
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. Esūrum fuisse.
7. Latūrum fuisse.
8. Faciendum fuisse.
9. Ferendum fuisse.

SUPINES.

1. _____
2. Itum, Itu.
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. Esūm, Esu.
7. Latūm.
8. _____
9. Lātu.

sum and *Fio* have no Gerunds. *Feror*, being Passive, has none.
u, volo, nolo, malo, and *fo* have no Supines.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

1. Potens,¹ *being able.*
2. N. lens,—G. euntis,—
D. eunti, *going.*
3. Volens,¹ *being willing.*
4. Nolens,¹ *being unwilling.*
5. Malens,¹ *being more willing.*
6. Edens, *eating.*
7. Ferens, *bearing.*
8. Factus, *become, or being done*
9. Latus, *borne, or having been*
borne.

FUTURE.

1. ———
2. Itūrus, *about to go.*
3. ———
4. ———
5. ———
6. Esūrus, *about to eat.*
7. Latūrus, *about to bear.*
8. Faciendus, a, um,* *about*
to become, or to be done.
9. Ferendus, a, um, *to be borne.*

Prosum takes a *d* in those persons which in *sum* begin with an *e*; as *es, prod-es.*

Queo, to be able, and *nequeo*, to be unable, are conjugated like *eo*, except that they have no Imperative Mood nor Gerunds.

DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A *Defective Verb* is one that is used only in some of the Moods and Tenses. The following are the principal:—

1. Aio,† *I say.*

Singular.		INDICATIVE MOOD.			Plural.	
Pres.	Aio,	āis,	ait,	——	——	āiunt.
Imp.	Āi-ēbam,	ebas,	ebat,	ebāmus,	ebatis,	ebant.
Perf.	——	āisti,	——	——	āistis,	——

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

——	ai,	——	——	——	——
----	-----	----	----	----	----

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Pres.	——	āias,	āiat,	——	——	āiant.
-------	----	-------	-------	----	----	--------

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. Aiens, *saying.*

2. Ausim, *I dare.*

INDICATIVE AND POTENTIAL MOODS.

Pres.	Ausim,	ausis,	ausit,	——	——	ausint.
-------	--------	--------	--------	----	----	---------

1. *Potens, volens, nolens, malens*, are more frequently used as adjectives.

* *Faciendus, a, um*, is sometimes changed into *factivendus, a um*.

† In the Verb *aio*, the first two letters form one syllable when they are followed by a vowel; but the *a* becomes short when *i* is followed by a consonant; as *āit*, he says.

3. Ave, hail.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. — { ave or } — — { avete or } —
 { aveto, } { avetote, }

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Avēre, to hail or speed.

4. Salve, God save you.

Singular.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Plural.

Fut. Imp. — salvēbis, — — — —

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. — { salve, } — — { salvēte, } —
 { salvēto } { salvetōte, }

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Salvēre, to be safe.

5. Cēdo, tell me.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. — cēdo, — — cēdīte, —

6. Faxo or Faxim, (for *Faciam*) I will or may do it.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Fut. Imp. Faxo, faxis, faxit, faxīmus, faxītis, faxint.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Perf. Faxim, faxis, faxit, faxīmus, faxītis, faxint.

Faxo and *faxim* are contracted for *fecēro* and *fecērim*, and are used in the same sense.

7. Quæso, I pray.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Quæso, quæsis, quæsit, quæsumus, — —

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. Quæserē, to beseech. *Pres.* Quæsens, beseeching.

8. Inquo or Inquam, I say.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. { Inquo, } inquis, inquit, inquīmus, — inquīunt.
 { Inquam, }

Imp. — — inquebat, — — inquebant.

Perf. — inquisti, — — — —

Fut. Imp. — inquires, inquiet, — — — —

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. — { inque, { inquit, — inquite, —
 { inquito, { inquito,

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. Inquiens, saying.

The following Verbs,—*cœpi*, I begin *or* have begun; *odi*, I hate *or* have hated; *memini*, I remember *or* have remembered,—have only those Tenses which are formed from the Perfect, but the Persons of each of these Tenses are entire:—

Cœp-i, }
Od-i } eram, ero, erim, issem, isse.
Memin-i, }

Cœpi has the Perfect Participle *cœptus*, begun *or* having begun, and the Future Active Participle *cœpturus*, about to begin. *Odi* has the Participle *osus*, hated *or* having hated, and *osurus*, about to hate. *Memini* has *memento* and *mementôte*, the Second Persons Singular and Plural of the Imperative.

Fari and its compounds *adfari* or *affari*, *effari* and *profari*, are used almost exclusively by the poets. *Fatur*, *fabor*; the Imperative, *fars*; the Participles, *fans*, *fatus*, *fandus*; the Gerunds, *fandi* and *fando*; and the Supine, *fatu*, are most commonly used. *Fari*, and also *dari*, to be given, are not used in the First Person Singular of the Present Indicative and Subjunctive. *Sci*, the Second Person Singular Imperative of *scire*, is not used, instead of which *scito* is employed.

Of the following Verbs, only the subjoined Persons are to be found:—*ap̄ge*, be gone; *tufti*, he begins; *confit*, it is done, *confitet*, *confiteret*, *confiteri*; *defti*, it is wanting, *deflet*, *deflat*, *deflêri*; *ovas*, thou rejoicest, *ovat*, *ovet*, *ovâret*, *ovans*, *ovatus*, *ovandi*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

An *Impersonal* Verb merely asserts the existence of some action or state, without reference to any particular subject or person, and is used only in the Third Person Singular; as *decet*, it becomes; *delectat*, it delights; *videtur*, it seems.

Impersonal Verbs have all the Moods and Tenses which Personal Verbs have, with the exception of the Imperative Mood; thus,

Indic. Decet, decēbat, decēbit, decuit, decuerat, decuerit;
Subj. deceat, decēret, decuerit, decuisset; *Infin.* decere, decuisse.

The Imperative, when necessary, is supplied by the Present Subjunctive; as *delectet*, let him delight.

Impersonals want not only the Imperative, but generally the Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.

Many Personal Verbs are used as Impersonals, with an Infinitive after them, or the Subjunctive Mood and *ut*; thus we do not say, *si places audire*, but *si placet tibi audire*, if it pleases you to hear.

Some Impersonals are found in the Third Person Plural; thus, *Non te hoc pudent*.

OF ADVERBS.

An *Adverb* is a word added to a Verb, an Adjective, or sometimes to another Adverb, to express some additional *circumstance* or *modification* respecting it; as "He writes *correctly*;"—"A *truly* excellent scholar;"—"He speaks *very fluently*."

Adverbs are in general derived from Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Participles, or Prepositions. They are likewise formed by composition, in various ways; as *hodie*, to-day, from *hoc-die*; *postridie*, the following day, from *postero die*, &c.

Adverbs, derived from Adjectives and Participles, have generally degrees of comparison. The Positive more frequently ends in *e* or *ter*; the Comparative in *ius*; the Superlative in *imè*; as

<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
Altè, <i>highly</i> ;	altiùs,	altissimè.
Fortiter, <i>bravely</i> ;	fortiùs,	fortissimè.
Adverbs are subject to the same irregularities and defects as their primitives; thus,		
Benè, <i>well</i> ,	melius,	optimè.
Malè, <i>badly</i> ,	pejùs,	pesimè.
Multùm, <i>much</i> ,	plùs,	plurimùm.
Parùm, <i>little</i> ,	minùs,	minimè, minimùm.
Propè, <i>near</i> ,	propiùs,	proximè.
Ultrà, <i>beyond</i> ,	ulteriùs,	ultimò,—ùm.
_____	magis, <i>more</i> ,	maximè.
_____	ociùs, <i>more swiftly</i> ,	ocissimè.
_____	priùs, <i>sooner</i> ,	primò, primum.
_____	potiùs, <i>rather</i> ,	potissimùm.
_____	_____	penissimè.
Penè, <i>almost</i> ,	_____	nuperrimè.
Nuper, <i>lately</i> ,	_____	novissimè.
Novè, <i>noviter, newly</i> ,	_____	meritissimò.
Meritò, <i>deservedly</i> ,	_____	_____
Satis, <i>enough</i> ,	satius,	_____
Secus, <i>otherwise</i> ,	secius,	_____

Two Adverbs, not derived from Adjectives, are also compared; *diù*, long, *diutius*, *diutissimè*; *sæpe*, often, *sæpiùs*, *sæpiusimè*.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are generally placed before Nouns and Pronouns to shew the *relation* which they bear to each other, or to some Verb; as "He went *from* London *to* York;"—"She is *above* disguise;"—"They are instructed *by* him."

These Prepositions govern an Ablative: *a,* ab, abs, absque, coram, cum, de, e, ex, palam, præ, pro, sine, tenus.*

These govern an Accusative and an Ablative: *clam, in, sub, subter, super.*

These govern an Accusative:

Ad, penes, adversus, circum, cis, circiter, erga, Extra, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus, ob, intra; Ultra, post, præter, propter, prope, pone, secundum, Per, circa, citra, contra, juxta, inter, et infra.

AN EXPLANATION OF THE PRINCIPAL PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions governing the *Accusative* case.

Ad, to, for, in respect to, at,	Juxta, near, nigh to.
near.	Ob, on account of, for, before.
Adversus, -um, towards,	Penes, in the power of.
against.	Per, through, by.
Ante, before.	Pone, behind.
Apud, at, near, with, among,	Post, after, behind, since.
in the presence of.	Præter, beyond, besides, except,
Circa, circum, about.	before.
Circiter, (indefinite time) about.	Prope, near.
Cis, citra, on this side.	Propter, on account of, near.
Contra, opposite to, against,	Secundum, next to, according
(in hostility.)	to, along, in favour of.
Erga, towards.	Secus, by, along.
Extra, out of, beyond.	Supra, above, beyond.
Infra, beneath, below, (whether	Trans, across, over.
of place, rank, or size.)	Versus, towards.
Inter, between, among, during.	Ultra, beyond.
Intra, within.	Usque, ¹ as far as.

* A, before consonants; ab, before vowels, and n, j, r, s; abs, before qu and t.

1. Usque is more commonly an Adverb, but is sometimes used alone for usque ad.

Prepositions which govern the *Ablative* case.

A, ab, abs, <i>from, by, after, on the side of.</i>	Palam, <i>with the knowledge of.</i>
Absque, <i>without.</i>	Præ, <i>before, in comparison with, on account of.</i>
Coram, <i>in the presence of, before.</i>	Pro, <i>for, instead of, before, according to.</i>
Cum, <i>with, along with.</i>	Procul, ² <i>far from.</i>
De, <i>concerning, from, of, according to.</i>	Simul, ² <i>together with.</i>
E, ex, <i>out of, from, for the good of, agreeably to.</i>	Sine, <i>without.</i>
	Tenus, <i>as far as, up to.</i>

Versus and *tenus* are placed after the Noun; as *Londinum versus*, towards London; *Oceano tenus*, as far as the ocean.

Tenus governs the Genitive Case of the Plural Number; as *Crurum tenus*, up to the legs.

Cum follows the Ablative Case of Pronouns; as *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*.

Clam, *coram*, and *palam*, are frequently Adverbs.

Prepositions governing *either* case.

1. The *Accusative*.

Clam, *without the knowledge of.*

In, *into, to, (in what direction?) tending to, towards, against, to or till, for, over, upon.*

Sub, *under, (signifying motion or subjection,) at, about, (signifying time,) sub noctem, at nightfall.*

Super, *above, over, beyond, over and above, in addition to.*

Subter, *under, is commonly used with the Accusative, both of rest and motion; and rarely with the Ablative.*

2. The *Ablative*.

Clam, *without the knowledge of.* *Clam* more frequently governs the Ablative than the Accusative.

In, *upon, (of rest,) in, on, among, in the case of.*

Sub, *under, (signifying rest or situation,) near, close, under, at the very time of.*

Super, *upon, concerning.*

Subter is rarely used with the Ablative.

2. *Procul* and *Simul* are more commonly Adverbs.

Prepositions, compounded with Verbs, frequently change their final consonant into the initial one of the Verb; as *succedo*, from *sub* and *cedo*; *collido*, from *con* and *lædo*.

The following words are called Inseparable Prepositions, because they are found only in compound words:

Amb, an, around.

Re or *red*, back.

Ne and *ve*, negatives.

Dis or *di*, asunder.

Se, aside, apart.

Con from *cum*, together.

In, not. *Per, præ*, and *pro*, have a similar meaning to what they have when single.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

A *Conjunction* is used to connect sentences together, so as out of *two* or *more*, to make only *one*; as "He *and* I must go." It sometimes joins only words; as "Two *and* three make five."

Conjunctions are divided, in reference to their signification, into several classes.

Copulative Conjunctions connect things which are to be considered *jointly*; such as *et, ac, atque, que*, and; *etiam, quoque, item*, also; *cum, tum*, both, and.

Disjunctive Conjunctions imply diversity, negation, doubt, or opposition; as *aut, vel, ve, seu, sive*, either, or; *nec, neque, neu, neve*, neither, nor; *an, anne, annon*, whether; *ne, necne*, nor, lest; *sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui*, but; *tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verum, enimvero*, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

Besides these, there are the *Causal, Final, Conditional*, and several other classes.

Autem, enim, vero, quidem, quoque, should not stand first in a sentence; *namque, sed, etenim, equidem, ergo, igitur, itaque, tamen*, may stand first or second. *Que, ne, ve*, are joined to the end of the latter of the two words which they connect. *Ac* is used before a consonant, *atque* before a vowel. *Ne, quidem*, not even, must be separated by one or more words.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

An *Interjection* is a word which expresses a sudden passion or emotion of the mind.

III.—SYNTAX.

Syntax teaches the proper construction of words in a sentence, according to established Rules.

A *Sentence* is an assemblage of words, making complete sense.

Sentences are of two kinds, simple and compound.

A *simple* sentence has only one Subject, and one Personal* Verb; as "I study my lessons."

A *compound* sentence consists of two or more simple sentences, connected by Conjunctions or Relatives; as "Industry procures competence, and frugality preserves it."

The principal parts of a simple sentence are the *Subject* or *Nominative*, the *Attribute* or *Verb*, and, generally, the *Object*.

The *Subject* is the thing of which something is affirmed or denied, the *Attribute* is the Verb affirming or denying, and the *Object* is the thing affected by such affirmation or denial; as "Charles studies his lessons." Here *Charles* is the Subject; *studies*, the Attribute or thing affirmed; and *lessons* the Object.

That which is affirmed or denied respecting the Subject is frequently called the *Predicate*, as in the preceding sentence, the Verb *studies* is the *Predicate*. When the Verb *to be* is used, it is termed the *Copula*, or that which forms the connection between the Subject and Predicate; as "The father is learned;" here *father* is the Subject, *is* the Copula, and *learned* the Predicate. In the sentence, "Great is the Lord;" *Lord* is the Subject, *is* the Copula, and *great* the Predicate.

The *Subject* may be not only a Noun or Pronoun, but an Adverb with a Genitive Case, or an Infinitive Mood and the words depending upon it. The *Predicate* may be either a Verb denoting an action or condition and its Object; as "Autumnus dat poma," Autumn gives apples; or it may be a Verb of Existence with dependent Nouns, Adjectives, or Participles; as "Mundus est globosus," The world is spherical.

Adjectives may agree with either the Subject or Predicate; as "That amiable and learned man has written several valuable works." Here "that amiable and learned man," is the Subject; *has written several valuable works*, is the Predicate.

Sentences are divided by points or stops. Those parts of a sentence which are separated by commas, are called clauses; and those separated by semicolons, are called members.

Syntax consists of four parts; *Concord*, *Government*, the *Use* of words, and their proper *Arrangement*.

Concord is the agreement which one word has with another, in Gender, Number, Case, or Person.

Thus "*Ego doceo*," I teach. Here *doceo* is of the Singular Number and First Person, because its Nominative Case *ego* is of the Singular Number and First Person; they agree, therefore, in Number and Person.

* *Personal* Verbs are those which have all the persons in each number.

Government or *Regimen*, is that power which one word has over another, in determining its Mood, Tense, or Case.

Thus "Alexander vicit *Darium*." Alexander conquered Darius. Here *Darium* is in the Accusative Case, governed by the Active Transitive Verb *vicit*.

Syntax furnishes, in some instances, directions for the *Use* of words. The *Arrangement* of words will be explained in a subsequent part.

CONCORD.

In Latin, there are four ConCORDS:

1. Between a Verb and its Subject or Nominative Case.
2. Between an Adjective and a Substantive.
3. Between a Relative and its Antecedent.
4. Between one Substantive and another.

THE FIRST CONCORD.

The Nominative Case and the Verb.

1. A Verb must be in the same Number and Person as its Subject or Nominative Case; as

Preceptor <i>legit</i> ,* vos verò		The master <i>reads</i> , but ye <i>negligitis</i> .
		<i>gard</i> not.

1. To find the Nominative Case, ask the question *who* or *what* with the Verb, and the word that answers to the question, is the Nominative Case to the Verb.

2. Every Nominative must have a Verb, and every Verb a Nominative, expressed or understood; thus in *Dí meliōra!* the Verb *dent* is understood. In the Phrase, "*Sunt quos juvat*," the Nominative *homines* is understood. All Impersonal Verbs therefore have a Nominative Case implied. Some Verbs, as *atunt*, *dicunt*, *ferunt*, have seldom a Nominative expressed; the word *homines* is then understood.

2. The Nominative Case of pronouns is expressed only when some emphasis or particular distinction of the person is necessary; as

<i>Vos</i> damnâstis;		<i>Ye</i> have condemned me;
-----------------------	--	------------------------------

As if *ye* were the only persons who condemned me.

3 Sometimes an Infinitive Mood, or a part of a sentence is the Nominative Case to a Verb in the Third Person; as

Ingenuas <i>didicisse</i> fideliter		<i>To have learned</i> the liberal
artes <i>Emollit</i> mores.		sciences thoroughly, <i>softens</i>
		much the manners.

4. Sometimes an Adverb with a Genitive Case is the Nominative to a Verb; as

<i>Partim virorum</i> cecidērunt		<i>Part of the men</i> fell in war.
in bello.		

* The word that is governed is printed in *italics*, and in some particular instances, the word that governs.

5. *Two or more* Nominatives Singular, connected by the Conjunctions *et, ac, atque, &c.* expressed or understood, require the Verb to be in the Plural Number, if they denote *living beings*, and especially *persons*; as

Pater et mater <i>vivunt</i> ;	The Father and mother <i>are</i> alive.
--------------------------------	---

b. If these Nominatives denote *things without life*, the Verb may be either singular or plural; as

Cum tempus necessitasque <i>postulat</i> ;	When time and necessity require.
--	----------------------------------

c. But when the assertion is only true of the Nominatives taken *collectively*, the Verb is plural; as

Beneficium et gratia hominum inter se <i>conjungunt</i> .	Kindness and favour <i>unite</i> men to each other.
---	---

1. When two Nominatives do not express two distinct ideas, the Verb is singular; as
Pietas et sanctitas *efficit* deos placatos; | Piety and sanctity will appease the Gods.

2. *Unus et alter* has a Verb in the singular, as
Dicit unus et alter breviter; | The one and the other *speaks* briefly.

3. A Singular Noun joined to another by *cum* is sometimes followed by a Plural Verb, as

Juba cum Labieno <i>venissent</i> .	Juba with Labienus <i>had come</i> .
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

4. When *et tum* is repeated, the Verb is in the singular, as it refers to the Nominatives separately; as

Hoc et ratio doctis et necessitas barbaris <i>prescripuit</i> ;	Both reason <i>has dictated</i> this to the learned and necessity to the barbarians.
---	--

5. The Disjunctives *aut, vel, neque, ve, seu, sive*, are followed sometimes by a singular, sometimes by a plural Verb. The singular is preferable, except when the subject includes the first and second persons, in which case the plural is used; as
"Hæc neque ego neque tu *fecimus*."

6. When the Nominatives are of different persons, the Plural Verb and Pronoun must agree with the First Person rather than with the Second, and with the Second rather than with the Third; as

Ego et tu felices <i>sumus</i> ;	Thou and I <i>are</i> happy; that is, <i>we</i> are happy.
Tu et pater felices <i>estis</i> ;	Thou and thy father <i>are</i> happy; that is, <i>ye</i> are happy.

Sometimes the Verb agrees in Number and Person with the last Nominative: as
Ego et Cicero meus *flagitabit*. | My Cicero and I shall ask it.

7. A Verb placed between two Nominatives of different Numbers may agree with either; as

Pectus quoque robora <i>fiunt</i> ;	The breast also becomes oak. (or <i>fit</i> .)
-------------------------------------	--

8. A Noun of Multitude Singular, such as *Turba*, *populus*, *plebs*, *manus*, *pars*, *gens*, *vulgus*, &c. sometimes requires the Verb to be in the Plural Number; as

Pars abiére; | Part of them are gone.

1. When the persons included under the collective term are represented as taken *collectively*, the Verb must be singular; as "*Vulgus scévit.*" But when the persons thus comprehended are intended to be represented *individually*, then the Verb is plural; as "*Si fortè vulgus conspexére;*" If by chance the vulgar saw.

2. A Plural Verb is frequently used after *uterque*, *quisque*, *alius*—*alterum*, *alterum*.

9. Impersonal Verbs have seldom a Nominative Case expressed; as

Tædet me vitæ; | I am weary of my life.

These Nominatives—*hoc*, *illud*, *id*, *idem*, *quod*, *multum*, &c. are sometimes prefixed as Nominatives to Impersonal Verbs; as "*Sin tibi id minus libebit.*"

THE SECOND CONCORD.

The Substantive and Adjective.

1. Adjectives, Participles, and Pronouns, must be of the same Gender, Number, and Case, as the Substantive to which they belong; as

<i>Magister doctus;</i>	A learned master.
<i>Fæmina bona;</i>	A good woman.
<i>Dulce pomum;</i>	A sweet apple.

1. It must be observed, that Possessive Pronouns, in Latin, agree with the Noun representing the person or thing *possessed*, and not, as in English, with that which represents the *possessor*; as

<i>Frater meus;</i>	His or her brother.
<i>Soror sua;</i>	His or her sister.
<i>Caput suum;</i>	His or her head.

Here *meus* is Masculine, not because it may mean *his*, but because the Noun *frater* is Masculine; while *soror*, being Feminine, requires *sua* to be of the same Gender, though in English it may mean *his* or *her* sister. Hence such phrases can be properly translated only by referring to the context.

2. To find the Substantive to an Adjective, ask the question *who* or *what* with the Adjective, and the word that answers to the question is the Substantive; as in the phrase "*Magister doctus*," ask, a *learned* what? The word which answers to the question is—*master*.

2. Sometimes an Infinitive Mood or a Sentence is the Substantive to an Adjective in the Neuter Gender; as

Diluculo surgere saluberri- | To rise early in the morning
um est; | is very healthy.

3. The word *man* (*homo*) is often omitted, and the Adjective is put in the *Masculine* Gender; as

Rari boni; | Good *men* are scarce.

1. An Adjective also may be used alone whenever the sense readily supplies the Substantive understood; as *Superi* (*Dii* understood). *Dextra* (*manus* understood).

2. Sometimes the Gender of the Adjective or Pronoun is determined only by the sense; as

Magna pars hominum vulnerati sunt; | A great part of the men were wounded.

4. The words *negotium*, a thing, and *officium*, the duty or office, are often omitted, and the Adjective put in the *Neuter* Gender; as

Labor omnia vincit;
Triste lupus stabulis;

Labour conquers *all things*.
The wolf is a sad *thing* to the folds.

Meum est discere;

It is *my duty* to learn.

5. Two or more Substantives Singular of different Genders, and signifying things *with life*, require an Adjective in the Plural Number, and of the *Masculine* rather than of the *Feminine* Gender; as

Rex et regina sunt beati; | The King and Queen are happy.

6. If the Substantives are of different Genders, and signify things *without life*, the Adjective is *Neuter*; as

Labor et voluptas dissimilima sunt; | Labour and pleasure are very unlike.

7. If the Substantives are of different Genders, and signify things *with*, and things *without life*, the Adjective must either be *Neuter*, or of the Gender of the thing *with life*; as

Jāne, fac æternos pacem, pacisque ministros; | Janus, make peace and the ministers of peace, eternal.

8. Sometimes the Adjective agrees with the last Substantive; as

Salus, liberi, fama, fortunæ, sunt carissimæ; | Life, children, honour, and riches, are dearest.

9. An Adjective *between* two Substantives of different Genders may agree with either of them; as

Paupertas mihi onus visum | Poverty seemed a burden to me.
or visa est;

In such instances, however, as the above, the Gender of the *subject* is preferred to that of the Predicate; as "*Semiramis puer credita est*," here *credita* agrees with *Semiramis* and not with *puer*.

10. A Noun of Multitude may have an Adjective in the Plural Number; as

Turba erant tuti; | The multitude were safe.

THE THIRD CONCORD.

The Relative and the Antecedent.

1. The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, though it *may* be in a different Case; as

Homo, <i>qui</i> Deum diligit,	The man <i>who</i> loves God, is
felix est;	happy.

Homo, <i>quem</i> Deus diligit,	The man <i>whom</i> God loves is
felix est;	happy.

1. The *Antecedent* is the Noun going before, and to which the Relative refers, as in "Homo, qui Deum diligit;" the word *homo* is the Antecedent, and the Relative *qui* is of the same Gender, Number, and Person. To find the Antecedent, ask the question *who* or *what* with the Verb, and the word that answers to the question is the Antecedent.

2. When the English word *that* can be turned into *who* or *which*, it is a Relative; but when it cannot be turned into *who* or *which*, it is either a Definitive Adjective or a Conjunction, which latter is expressed in Latin by *quod* or *ut*.

3. In construing Latin, the Relative must always be taken first in the clause in which it stands.

4. The Relative often stands alone, a Noun being understood from which it takes its Gender and Number; as "*Qui* benè latuit, benè vixit;" (he) who has well escaped notice, has lived well.

2. When the Relative refers to a Verb or to a whole clause as its Antecedent, it must be put in the Neuter Gender; as

In tempore veni, <i>quod</i> rerum omnium est primum;	I came in time, which is the principal business of all.
---	---

Tu multum dormis et sæpè potas; <i>quæ</i> (<i>negotia</i> understood) ambo sunt corpori inimica;	Thou sleepest much and drink-est often; both <i>which things</i> are injurious to the body.
--	---

3. The Relative, like the Noun, is in the Nominative Case when it is the *subject* of a Verb, but is in the Accusative or some other oblique case, when it is the *object* of a Verb or Preposition; as

Est Deus, <i>qui</i> omnia videt;	He is God who sees all things.
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------

Liber, <i>quem</i> (<i>librum</i> understood) legis;	The Book which (book) you read.
---	---------------------------------

Ecce homo, <i>cui</i> (<i>homini</i> understood) confidis;	Behold the man in whom thou trustest.
---	---------------------------------------

When the Substantive is used in the clause and case of the Relative, it must be understood in a different case in its own clause; as "*Urbem* quam statuo, vestra est;" that is, *Urbe*, quam urbem statuo, vestra est.

4. With Antecedents of different Genders, the same Rules are applicable for Relatives as for Adjectives; as

Ninus et Semīramis, *qui* | Ninus and Semiramis, who
condidērunt Babylona; | founded Babylon.

When the Relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the First Person rather than with the Second, and with the Second rather than with the Third; as "*Ego sum vir, qui facio*;" I am a man, who do.

5. Sometimes the Relative agrees with the Personal Pronoun which is implied in the Possessive; as

Omnes laudāre fortunas me- | All (began) to praise my for-
as, *qui* gnatum habērem tali | tune, who had a son en-
ingenio præditum; | dowed with such a disposi-
 | tion.

That is, *fortunas mei, qui*; the personal *mei* being implied in the Possessive *meas*, and the Relative *qui* is therefore Masculine.

6. A Relative placed between two Substantives of different Genders and Numbers, generally agrees with the former; as

Genus hominum, *quod* He- | A race of men which is called
lōtes vocatur; | Helots.

But when the Relative, placed between two Nouns, is followed by *sum* or a Verb of *calling* and *naming*, such as *dicere*, *vocare*, *appellare*, *nominare*, &c. it frequently agrees with the Noun after the Verb; as

Animal, *quem* vocamus ho- | The animal which we call
minem; | man.

When a Relative refers to a Common and a Proper Noun of different Genders, it may agree with either of them; as

"*Flumen* est Arar *quod* in Rhodānum | There is a river (called) Arar which flows
infuit;" | into the Rhone.

7. The Relative sometimes takes an Adjective after it, which properly belongs to the Antecedent; as "*Alvus calore quem multum habet omnia conficit*." The stomach digests all things, by the abundant warmth which it has; instead of "*multo calore quem habet*."

Hence may be explained the use of the Relative in such phrases as the following: "*Quæ tua est virtus expugnabis*;" Such is your valour, that you will take by storm; that is, *eâ virtute, quæ tua est*.

8. Words of Relative quantity and quality; as *qualis*, *quantus*, *quotus*, are frequently construed as the Relative; thus "*Tanta multitudo, quantam urbs nostra capere potest*."

Talis is frequently omitted before *qualis*, *tantus* before *quantus*, &c.

THE FOURTH CONCORD.

A Substantive with a Substantive, &c.

1. Two Substantives coming together, and signifying the same person or thing, are put in the same Case by *Apposition*; as

Cicero Orātor;

Cicero the Orator.

Opes irritamenta malōrum; | Riches the incentives of evil.

A proper name, when accompanied by a common one, is generally in the Genitive Case; as "Fons Timavī," The fountain of Timavus,—and not Fons *Timavus*.

2. The Noun or Pronoun that answers a question must be in the same Case and Tense as the word that asks it; as

Quis mundum creavit? *Deus*;

Who created the world? God.

Quarum rerum nulla est | Of what things is there no ful-
satietas? *Divitiarum*; | ness? Of riches.

1. Sometimes, however, other Rules of Syntax require the Case to be varied; as "*Quanti emisti? Viginti minis.*" Here *minis* is required to be in the Ablative, because it is the *specified* price.

2. The Possessive Pronouns correspond with the Genitive of the Personal or Relative, both in the question and the answer; as *Cujus est liber? Meus. Cujum est pecus? Melibæi.*

GOVERNMENT.

GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

1. When two Substantives come together, signifying different things, the latter is put in the *Genitive Case*; as

Amor nummi;

| The love of money.

The Genitive signifies *origin*, *cause*, or *possession*, and generally has the sign *of*; but sometimes it takes the signs *to*, *for*, *in*, *from*.

The word *of* is not always a sign of the Genitive Case; after words signifying *praise* or *blame*, *plenty* or *want*, the *quality* of things, *worthy* or *unworthy*, *need*, *descended* or *born*, it is generally a sign of the Ablative.

When the latter Substantive denotes the *substance* or *materials* of which the former consists, the word *of* is expressed by *de*, *e*, or *ex*; as "*Ensis ex ferro factus.*" A sword made of iron. Instead of a Substantive, an Adjective is sometimes used; as "*ferreus ensis.*" *Of* signifying *concerning*, is expressed by *de*; signifying *by* or *from*, by *a*, *ab*, *e*, *ex*. *Of*, after *mereor*, is rendered by *de*; after Comparatives and Superlatives by *de*, *e*, or *inter*.

2. Sometimes the Genitive Case is put alone, the former Substantive being understood; as

Ubi ad *Dianæ* venēris; that | When you come to Diana's.
is, ad *templum Dianæ*; | (*temple* understood.)

Many instances of this kind occur; thus "*Per Varronis,*" that is, *per fundum Varronis*. *Poppæa Neronis*; that is, "*confus Neronis*;" *Aberant bidui*; that is, *iter bidui*.

3. The Genitive Case is sometimes changed into the *Dative*; as

Urbi pater est;

| He is the father of the city.

The Genitive, signifying *possession*, is also frequently changed into an Adjective; as "*Domus paterna,*" for "*Domus patris.*"

4. An Adjective of the Neuter Gender, not having a Substantive expressed, frequently requires a *Genitive Case*; as

Paulūlum pecuniæ;

| A very little money.

Quid rei est?

| What is the matter?

Angusta viarum;

| Narrow ways.

1. The Adjectives thus used, generally signify *quantity*; as *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum*; also *id, quid, hoc, aliquid, quidquam, summum, ultimum, extremum, dimidium*, and *medium*, with many Plural Neuters; as *opaca locorum; incerta fortunæ*, &c. The words *quod, aliquod, quoddam*, always agree with their Substantives, but *quid* and *plus* are followed by a Genitive.

2. *Nihil, hoc, id, illud, istud, quid, aliquid, quidquam*, admit the Genitive of Neuter Adjectives of the *Second*, but rarely of the *Third* Declension; as *Nihil sinceri; Quid reliqui est?*

3. *Aliud* agrees with *nihil*, and is not in the Genitive Case according to this Rule.

5. If the latter of two Substantives have annexed to it an Adjective signifying *praise, blame*, or any kind of *distinction or quality*, as *weight, size, length*, &c. it may be put in the *Genitive* or *Ablative* Case; as

<i>Summæ virtutis</i> adolescens;	A youth of great virtue.
<i>Vir nullâ fide;</i>	A man of no integrity.
<i>Magno pondere</i> saxum;	A stone of great weight.

1. The latter Substantive must *always*, in this sense, have an Adjective joined with it; it would therefore be improper to say *virtute* adolescens, or *virtutis* adolescens.

2. The latter Substantive must also denote a part or property of the former, otherwise it does not belong to this Rule; such phrases as "*pulchrâ prole parentem*," will therefore be excluded.

6. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, govern an *Ablative* of the thing wanted, and a *Dative* of the object *to* or *for* which the thing is wanted; as

<i>Auctoritate tuâ nobis</i> opus est;	We have need of your authority.
Nunc <i>viribus</i> usus;	Now there is need of strength.

Opus and *Usus* sometimes govern the *Genitive* of the thing wanted; as *Lectionis opus est*.

7. *Opus* is sometimes used as an indeclinable Adjective for *necessary* governing a *Dative*; as

<i>Dux nobis opus</i> est;	A leader is necessary for us.
----------------------------	-------------------------------

GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1.—The Genitive after Adjectives.

1. Adjectives signifying *desire, aversion, or disdain; knowledge, ignorance, or doubt; remembrance or forgetfulness; fear or confidence; innocence or guilt; diligence or idleness; care or negligence*; with verbal Adjectives in *ax, ns, and tus*, require the *Genitive* Case; as

<i>Novitâtis</i> avida;	Fond of novelty.
<i>Præscia futûri;</i>	Foreknowing the future.
<i>Timidus Deôrum;</i>	Fearing the Gods.
<i>Tempus edax rêrum;</i>	Time the devourer of things.
<i>Aliëni appetens, sui profûsus;</i>	Coveting the property of others, lavish of his own.

1. To this Rule also belong Adjectives, denoting *zeal, curiosity, consciousness, capacity, incapacity, skill, prudence, participation*, and their opposites; also *sorrow, alarm, anger, foresight, art, patience, resolution, liberality, profusion, parsimony*, besides many others denoting an *affection* of the mind.

2. It is to be observed that Participles used as such, do not come under this Rule; thus "*Patiens frigus*," signifies one enduring cold at this moment; but "*Patiens frigoris*," is applied to one who is capable of bearing cold habitually.

2. Words denoting a *part* of a greater number, whether Pronouns, Comparatives, Superlatives, or Numerals, require the Genitive Plural, from which Genitive they take their Gender; as

Quisquis <i>Deōrum</i> ;	Whoever of the Gods.
<i>Manūum</i> fortior est dextra;	The right is the stronger of the hands.
Maxime <i>principum</i> ;	The greatest of chiefs.
<i>Sapientūum</i> octāvus;	The eighth of the wise men.

1. If the Substantive be a Collective Noun, the Genitive Singular is used.

2. *Partitives*, that is, such words as denote a *part* of a great number, agree in Gender with the Substantives which they govern; as *Nulla sororum*. But if the governed Noun be a Collective, the Partitive takes the Gender of the Noun understood; as "*Ætatis suæ doctissimus*;" that is, *doctissimus vir*. If also there are two Substantives of different Genders, the Partitive agrees with the former; as "*Indus fluminum maximus*."

3. The Comparative with the Genitive of Partition, is used only when *two persons* or things belonging to the *same* class, nature, or description, are compared, as "*Major fratrum*," the greater of the (two) brothers. The Superlative with the Genitive of Partition is used when *three or more* things of the *same* class, &c. are compared; as "*Maximus fratrum*," the greatest of (three or more) brethren. When the comparison between two objects is expressed by *than*, the Rule under the Ablative of Adjectives must be used.

4. Instead of the Genitive Case, Partitives sometimes govern the Ablative with the Prepositions *a, ab, de, e, ex*; or the Accusative with *ante* or *inter*; as

Tertius <i>ab Ænē</i> ;	The third from Æneas.
Primus <i>inter omnes</i> ;	The first among all.

5. *Secundus* sometimes requires a Dative Case; as

Hand ulli veterum virtute secundus;	Inferior to none of the ancients in valour.
-------------------------------------	---

2.—The Dative after the Adjective.

1. Adjectives followed in English by *to* or *for*, and signifying *profit or loss; likeness or unlikeness; favour or injury; pleasure, displeasure, or pain; submission or resistance; trust or distrust; friendship or hatred; fitness or unfitness; and relation* to any thing; with many words compounded with *con*, govern a Dative Case of the Noun to which they refer; as

Utilis <i>agris</i> ;	Useful to the lands.
Jucundus <i>amicis</i> ;	Pleasant to his friends.
<i>Omnibus</i> supplex;	Submissive to all.
Contrarius <i>albo</i> ;	Contrary to white.
Est finitimus <i>oratōri</i> poëta;	A poet is nearly allied to an orator.
Contermina <i>fonti</i> ;	Adjoining the fountain.

1. This Rule also comprehends Adjectives signifying *clearness* or *obscurity*, *nearness*, *ease* or *difficulty*, and *equality* or *inequality*.

2. Some Adjectives, signifying *affection* or *passion*, are followed by *in* or *erga* with the Accusative; such as *acerbus*, *animatus*, *beneficus*, *contumax*, *crudelis*, *durus*, *gratiosus*, *gratus*, *gravis*, *impius*, *implacabilis*, *iniquus*, *injuriōsus*, *liberalis*, *mendax*, *misericors*, *officiōsus*, *pius*, *sævus*, *sevērus*, and *torvus*.

3. *Idem*, with the poets, sometimes has a Dative. *Proptor* and *proximus* take after them the Dative, or the Accusative governed by *ad* understood; as "*Propius vero*;" "*Proximus Pompētum*." (*ad* und.)

2. Some of these Adjectives have other Cases besides the Dative; thus

a. Adjectives of *likeness* and *unlikeness* are followed generally by a Dative, but sometimes by a Genitive; as

Par ventis;

| Like the winds.

Domini similis;

| Like your master.

To these may be added, *affinis*, *communis*, *proprius*, *suūtimus*, *adus conterminus*, *superstes*, *æquālis*, *contrarius*, *adversus*, *amicus*, *inimicus*, *familiaris*, *cognātus*, *propinquus*, *vicinus*, *soctus*, *amīlus*, *germānus*, *invidus*, and *necessarius*. *Consectus* has a Genitive of the *thing* and a Dative of the *person*.

b. Adjectives signifying *motion* or *tendency* to a thing, take after them the Accusative with *ad*, rather than the Dative; as

Ad præmia velox;

| Swift for rewards.

To this Class belong *celer*, *tardus*, *piger*, *impiger*, *lentus*, *præceps*, *parātus*, *promus*, *propensus*, &c.

c. Adjectives signifying *usefulness*, *fitness*, and the contrary, with *natus*, *commōdus*, *incommōdus*, and *vēhēmens*, take not only a Dative, but frequently an Accusative with *ad*; as

Utilis ad nullam rem;

| Useful for nothing.

Natus ad gloriam;

| Born for glory.

But when the Object is a *person*, the Dative and not the Accusative, is used after these Adjectives.

3. Verbal Adjectives in *bilis*, and Participles Passive in *dus*, require a Dative Case; as

Nulli penetrabilis *astro*;

| Penetrable by no star.

Vivendum est mihi;

| I must live.

1. *Perfect* Passive Participles in *tus* have sometimes a Dative; as "*Dilecta sorori*," Loved by thy sister. But among prose writers they are generally followed by an Ablative with a Preposition; as "*Mors Crassi est a multis deflētā*;" The death of Crassus was lamented by many. Participles in *dus* are also frequently followed by an Ablative with *a* or *ab*.

2. *Inolus*, *obolus*, *pervolus*, *imervolus*, and other Adjectives of a Passive signification, as *facilis*, *indolētilis*, are followed by a Dative; as "*Troja obvia Gratiis*."

3.—The Accusative after the Adjectives.

1. Adjectives of dimension, such as *longus*, *latus*, *crassus*, *profundus*, *altus* and *densus*, govern Nouns denoting measure, generally in the Accusative Case, but sometimes in the Ablative or Genitive; as

<i>Turris centum pedes alta;</i>	A tower a hundred feet high.
<i>Fons latus pedibus tribus;</i>	A fountain three feet wide.

1. Words denoting measure, are *digitus*, *palmus*, *pes*, *cubitus*, *ulna*, *passus*, *stadium*, *milliare*.

2. The excess or deficiency of measure is always put in the Ablative; as "*Turris est sex pedibus altior quàm murus.*"

2. An Accusative is often put after Adjectives and Participles governed by a Preposition understood; as

<i>Os humerosque Deo similis;</i> (<i>secundum</i> und.)	Like to a God, as to his countenance and his shoulders.
<i>Humeros amictus;</i> (<i>circa</i> und.)	Covered round his shoulders.

4.—The Ablative after the Adjective.

1. Adjectives signifying plenty or want, riches or poverty, govern the Ablative and sometimes the Genitive Case; as

<i>Terra triumphis dives;</i>	A land rich in triumphs.
<i>Expers fraudis;</i>	Void of deceit.
<i>Plena timoris;</i>	Full of dread.

1. To this Rule belong Adjectives signifying rich, plentiful, full, fruitful, laden, stored, free, partaking, powerful, liberal, abounding, and their opposites poor, destitute, deprived, empty, barren, void, weak.

2. Some of these Adjectives govern the Genitive only; as *benignus*, *exors*, *impos*, *impotens*, *irritus*, *liberalis*, *munificus*, *prælargus*. Some the Ablative only; as *beatus*, *differtus*, *frugifer*, *multus*, *tentus*, *distentus*, *tumidus*, *turgidus*. Some either the Genitive or Ablative; as *copiosus*, *dives*, *fœcundus*, *ferax*, *immans*, *inanis*, *inops*, *largus*, *vactus*, *modicus*, *immodicus*, *nimius*, *opulentus*, *plenus*, *potens*, *purus*, *refertus*, *satur*, *vacuus*, *uber*. The following sometimes take the Preposition *a* or *ab*:—*Copiosus*, *firmus*, *immunis*, *inanis*, *inops*, *instructus*, *liber*, *nudus*, *paratus*, *imparatus*, *solatus*, *vacuus*. These have *in* with an Ablative; *Fœcundus*, *modicus*, *parcus*, *pauper*, *tenus*.

2. Adjectives, and sometimes Substantives, govern an Ablative Case of that word which denotes the cause (*why*) and the manner (*how*) a thing is effected; as

<i>Pallidus irâ;</i>	Pale with anger.
<i>Nomine grammaticus;</i>	A grammarian in name.
<i>Trojanus origine;</i>	A Trojan by descent.

The Ablative in the last two examples are, properly speaking, governed by *in* understood.

3. *Dignus*, *indignus*, *præditus*, *captus*, *contentus*, *extorris*, *fretus*, *liber*, and *alienus*; also Adjectives and Participles sig-

nifying *descent*, as *natus, satus, ortus, editus, cretus, oriundus*, and *prognātus*, with these three, signifying price,—*carus, vilis*, and *venālis*, require an Ablative Case; as

<i>Dignus honōre;</i>	Worthy of honour.
<i>Tali ingenio præditum;</i>	Endowed with such a dis- position.
<i>Oculis capti;</i>	Blind.
<i>Fretus juventā;</i>	Relying on youth.
<i>Nate Deā;</i>	Born of a Goddess.
<i>Gemmis venāle;</i>	To be purchased with jewels.

1. *Alienus* has frequently an Ablative with *a* or *ab*; as "*A me alienum*," Foreign to me. Sometimes it has a Dative or a Genitive; as "*Alienus ambitioni*; Non aliena consilii."

2. *Dignus, indignus, extorris*, and *contentus*, are sometimes followed by a Genitive; as "*Indignus ædorum*."

4. When two Nouns or Pronouns are compared with each other, the one following the Comparative Degree is put in the Ablative Case, if the word *than* is not expressed by *quàm*; as

Vilius argentum est auro; | *Silveris* less valuable than gold.

When the Comparative is followed by *quàm* expressed, the objects compared are put in the *same* Case; as "*Vilius argentum est quàm aurum*." "*Ego hominem callidiorem vidi neminem quàm Phormionem*;" I have seen no one more cunning than Phormio.

1. The Nominative and Accusative only can be repeated after *quàm*; and if any other Case precede the Comparative, the Verb *sum* with the Nominative must be used; as *Loquor de viro sapientiore quàm tu es*.

2. When the comparison lies not between two Nouns, but between two Adjectives, both Adjectives must be put in the Positive with *magis quàm*, or both in the Comparative with *quàm*; as

Vir magis doctus, quàm eloquens; or | *A man more learned than eloquent.*
doctior quàm eloquentior;

3. The word *than* before a Verb is always expressed by *quàm*; as "*Nihil turpius est quàm mentiri*;" Nothing is more shameful than to lie.

4. *Quàm* must always be expressed after Adverbs in the Comparative Degree; as "*Oderam hunc multo pejus quàm Clodium*;" I hated this man much more than I hated Clodius.

5. *Quàm* is frequently omitted after *minus, plus, amplius, longior, major*, and *minor*, except when they are joined with a Dative; as "*In eo prælio ceciderant minus duo milia civium*."

6. The Positive with *magis* or *minus* is sometimes followed by the Ablative; as "*Hoc nemo fuit minus ineptus*."

7. The Comparative is often followed by *opinione, spe, æquo, solito, justo, dicto*; as "*Perfecisti rem spe citius*;" Thou hast accomplished the thing sooner than was expected.

8. A Noun is frequently put in the Ablative after a Comparative Adjective, governed not by the Comparative, but by some Preposition understood; as "*Carpore validior*," stronger in body. So also *Grandis, grandior; magnus, major, maximus; minor, minimus*, are joined with the Ablative *natu*, to denote age.

5. The *excess* or *defect* of one thing compared with another, is expressed in the Ablative; *Tanto, quanto, hoc, eo, quo, paulo, multo, altero tanto*, (as much again,) *aliquanto, multis partibus, nihilo*, and *nimio*, are Ablatives of this kind; as

<i>Quanto superiores sumus,</i>	The more eminent we are, the
<i>tanto nos geramus submissiùs;</i>	more humbly we should behave.

<i>Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt;</i>	The more they have the more they desire.
--	--

Instead of the Ablatives *aliquanto, tanto, quanto*, the Accusatives *aliquantum, tantum, quantum*, are often used adverbially, *ad* or *in* being understood; as "*Quantum doctor, tantum modestior.*"

PRONOUNS.

1. *Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, (the Genitive Cases of the Personals *ego, tu, sui*,) are joined to Substantives taken in a *Passive* Sense; as

<i>Languet desiderio tui;</i>	She languishes for want of you.
<i>Imago nostri;</i>	The picture of <i>our person</i> .
<i>Amor mei;</i>	The love of <i>me</i> ; or the love with which I am loved.

2. When *action* or *possession* is signified, the Possessive Pronouns *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, agreeing with their Nouns, must be used; as

<i>Favet desiderio tuo;</i>	He favours your desire.
<i>Imago nostra;</i>	Our picture; or that which we possess.

1. The distinctions given in these two Rules are sometimes, however, reversed; as "*Nec me mea fallit imago;*" Nor does my likeness deceive me.

2. Numerals, Partitives, Comparatives, and Superlatives, are followed by *nostrum* and *vestrum*, rather than by *nostri* and *vestri*; as "*Uterque nostrum, primus vestrum.*"

3. These Possessives, *meus, tuus, suus, noster*, and *vester*, take after them these Genitives, *ipsius, solius, unius, duorum, trium, &c. omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque*; and also the Genitive Cases of Participles, which are referred to the Primitive word understood; as

<i>Meâ unius operâ;</i>	By my single service.
<i>Meum solius peccatum;</i>	My offence alone.
<i>Mea scripta timentis;</i>	The writings of me fearing.
<i>De tuo ipsius studio conjecturam ceperis;</i>	You may guess from your own individual study.
<i>In suâ cujusque laude, præstantior;</i>	More excellent each in his own skill.
<i>Vestris paucorum respondet laudibus;</i>	He answers to the praises of you few.

Perhaps the words inserted after these Possessives occurred to the mind of the Writer sooner than the Substantives which they are intended to strengthen.

4. *Sui* and *suus* are Reciprocals, because they generally refer to the principal subject in the sentence. *Sui* is used when *self* or *selves* can be added to *him, her, it, or them*; *suus* when *own* may be added to *his, her, its, or their*; as

Petrus nimium admiratur <i>se</i> ; parcat erroribus <i>suis</i> ;		Peter admires <i>himself</i> too much; he spares <i>his own</i> errors.
---	--	---

1. When the subject is of the Third Person, and no transition from one subject to another is to be noted, *sui* and *suus* must be employed; but when a change of subject is to be signified, either *is, ille, or iste*, must be used; as "Cicero arcessivit Tironem et fratrem *suum*;" Cicero called upon Tiro and his *own* brother. Here *suum* refers to Cicero; *eius* would have referred to Tiro, and the meaning would have been Cicero called upon Tiro and on his (*Tiro's*) brother.

2. Though the principal subject of discourse is generally the Nominative to the Verb, it is sometimes expressed in an Oblique Case; thus "Ab Antonio admonitus sum, ut manè *sibi* adessem." Here the principal subject is expressed by an Ablative Case, and yet it is properly represented by *sibi*. The same observation may be applied to the following sentence; "Hunc cives *sui* ex urbe eiecerunt."

The Ancients sometimes deviated from these Rules; thus Nepos in Milt. 4. says, "Cum viderent de *eorum* virtute non desperari," *sui* or *suorum* virtute would have been better.

3. *Ipse* is sometimes used to render a Noun more prominent or emphatical, in opposition to some other word expressed or implied. It is joined with the Pronouns of the Three Persons, and may either be put in the same Case with them, as *mei, tui, sui, ipseius, mihi ipse, me ipsum*, &c. or may remain in the Nominative; as "Virtus est per se *ipsa* laudabilis."

4. "*Ipse* with *et* is used to denote that the person or thing so described coincides in some circumstance with another, to whom that circumstance has been already attributed; as 'Locri urbs, desciverat *et ipsa* ad Pænos;' 'The city of Locri *also* had revolted to the Carthaginians,' as well as others before mentioned."

5. *Hic, iste, and ille* are thus distinguished; *hic* refers to that which is nearest to the person speaking; *iste*, to that which is nearest to the person addressed; *ille*, to that which is at a distance from both.

Ille also frequently denotes *dignity*; *iste*, *contempt*; as "Magnus ille Alexander, iste nebulo."

When *hic* and *ille* refer to two persons or things mentioned before, *hic* generally refers to the *latter*, *ille* to the *former*; as

—"Nihil est nisi pontus et ær,
 Nubibus *hic* tumidus, fluctibus *ille* minax;"

There is nothing but sea and air; the latter swelling with clouds, the former threatening with waves.

Sometimes, however, *hic* is made to refer to the *former*, and *illa* to the *latter* of two things before mentioned; as in Ovid,—"*Sic* deus et virgo est; *hic* spe celer, *illa* timore;" Thus are the god and maiden; he swift with hope, she with fear.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

The Nominative Case after the Verb.

1. Neuter Verbs, denoting *existence, gesture or posture*; Passive Verbs, denoting *name or title, election or appointment, estimation or opinion*, have the same Case after them, as they have before them; as

<i>Ira est furor;</i>	Anger is a madness.
<i>Ego incēdo Regīna;</i>	I move (as) a Queen.
<i>Tempus actionis opportu-</i>	A proper time for action is
<i>num appellatur occasio;</i>	called opportunity.
<i>Cupio me non mendācem</i>	I wish not to be thought a
<i>putari;</i>	liar.
<i>Licet illis esse timīdis;</i>	They may be fearful.

1. Verbs denoting existence are *sum, fio, existo, nascor, reddor*;—those of gesture or of posture, are *eo, incēdo, venio, cubo, sto, jaceo, sedeo, evado, fugio, dormio, maneo, &c.* Passives, denoting name or title, are *appellor, dicor, nominor, perhibeor, vocor, salutor*;—of election or appointment, *creor, eligor, designor, renuncior, declaror*;—of estimation or opinion, *credor, existimor, habeor, judicor, numeror, putor, videor, reperior, deprehendor, censeor.*

2. The Passives also of other Verbs, as of *do, addo, adjungo, adscribo, accio, peto, sumo*, frequently take the same Case after as before them, when both words refer to the same thing; as "*Servus puero comes adjungitur*;" The slave is added to the boy as a companion.

3. When the Infinitive of any Verb, particularly of *sum*, has the Dative before it, governed by an Impersonal Verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the Dative or the Accusative; as "*Licet mihi esse beato*," or "*Licet mihi esse beatum*;" *me* being understood,—thus "*Licet mihi (me) esse beatum*."

2. An Adjective in the Nominative Case may be placed after any Verb, when such Adjective agrees with the Nominative Case; as

<i>Pii orant taciti;</i>	Pious men pray silently.
<i>Hic codex est meus;</i>	This book is mine.

An Adjective is frequently joined with a Verb, when in English either an Adverb or a Substantive with a Preposition would be used; as "*Latus abit*;" He departs gladly. "*Frequentes conveniunt*;" They came in great numbers.

3. Nouns depending on the same Verb or Preposition, and connected by Conjunctions expressed or understood, must be in the same Case; as

<i>Socrātes docuit Xenophon-</i>	Socrates taught Xenophon and
<i>tem et Platōnem;</i>	Plato.

a. But sometimes the words themselves require different Cases; as

<i>Vixi Romæ et Athenis;</i>	I lived at Rome and Athens.
------------------------------	-----------------------------

The Genitive Case after the Verb.

1. *Sum*, signifying the *possession, duty, disposition, sign*, or *lot* of any one, requires a Genitive Case; as

Pecus est Melibœi;	The cattle is Melibœus's.
Adolescentis est majores natu reverēri;	It is the duty of a young man to reverence his elders.

Fio is frequently used in the same manner as *sum*; as "*Asia Romanorum facta est*;" Asia came under the dominion of the Romans.

a. The Neuter Possessive Pronouns, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum*, and *vestrum*, are used with *sum*, and not the Genitives of the Personal Pronouns *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*; as

Non <i>meum</i> est;	It is not my business.
----------------------	------------------------

Certain Possessive Adjectives, as *regius, humanus, belluinus, avicilis*, are frequently used in the same manner; as "*Humanum est errare*;" To err is human.

2. Verbs of *accusing, complaining or acquitting, convicting or condemning*, require the *person* to be in the Accusative, and the *crime* either in the Genitive or in the Ablative, with or without a Preposition; as

<i>Alterum</i> accusat <i>probrī</i> ;	He accuses the other of dishonesty.
<i>Eum</i> accūsāre <i>de negligentiā</i> ;	To accuse him of negligence.
<i>Suspiciōne</i> absolvēre;	To acquit of suspicion.

a. The *punishment* is generally in the Ablative, and sometimes in the Genitive, particularly with *capitis* and *voti*; as *capitis* or *capite damnari*. The Accusative also with *ad* or *in* is used; as *Damnare ad mortem*.

1. *Uterque, nullus, alter, neuter, alius,ambo*, and the Superlative Degree may be joined to Verbs of this kind in the Ablative Case; as "*Accusas furti, an stupri? Utroque, vel de utroque*." "*De plurimis simul accusaris*;" You are accused of very many things at once.

2. The following Verbs of *accusing*, &c. have an Accusative of the thing, and not a Genitive:—*calumnior, carpo, corripio, criminor, culpo, excuso, mulcto, punio, reprehendo, sugillo, tazo, traduco, vituperō*; as "*Potentiam alicujus invidiosè criminari*." This construction is sometimes found with the Verbs which have a Genitive or an Ablative; as "*Ejus avaritiam perfidiamque accusarunt*."

3. *Accuso, incuso, inculco*, sometimes take two Accusatives; as "*Si id me non accusas*." One of these Accusatives is generally *id, illud, quod*, or the like.

3. Verbs of *admonishing or warning* govern an Accusative of the person and a Genitive of the thing; as

Admonēto <i>illum pristinae fortunæ</i> ;	Remind him of his former condition.
---	-------------------------------------

Instead of the Genitive, these Verbs sometimes take an Ablative with *de*; as "*De quo vos admonui*." Sometimes *moneo* and its compounds have two Accusatives; as "*Sed eos hoc moneo*." But one of these Accusatives is generally a Pronoun; as

hoc, id, quod, &c.—or some word referring to number or quantity; as *unum, duo, multa, nihil, nominihi*. Sometimes these Verbs are followed by an Infinitive, or by a Subjunctive governed by *ut* or *ne*; as "*Pietas erga parentes officium conservare monet.*" "*Immortalia ne speres monet annus.*"

4. Verbs of *remembrance* and *forgetfulness*,—as *reminiscor, meminī, recordor*, and *obliscor*,—require more frequently a Genitive, but sometimes an Accusative Case of the thing remembered or forgotten; as

<i>Datæ fidei reminiscitur;</i>	He remembers his promise.
<i>Oblivisci injurias;</i>	To forget injuries.

Meminī, when it signifies, to *make mention*, is followed by a Genitive, or by *de*; as "*Neque hujus rei meminit.*" "*De quibus multi meminērunt.*"

5. Verbs signifying the *affections* of the mind,—as *doubt, anxiety, grief, shame, desire, &c.*—govern either a Genitive or an Ablative Case; as

<i>Pendeo animi vel animo;</i>	I am in doubt.
<i>Discrūcior animi vel animo;</i>	I am tormented in my mind.

1. *Fastidio, miror*, and *vereor*, are sometimes used with a Genitive; as "*Fastidit mei.*" He is disgusted at me.

2. Some Verbs, signifying *anger, passion, &c.* have a Dative.—See the Rule under Dative.

6. *Satāgo, misereor*, and *miseresco*, require a Genitive Case; as

<i>Rerum suārum satāgit;</i>	He is busy with his own affairs.
<i>Miserēre labōrum;</i>	Pity my distresses.

7. *Miseret, miserescit, piget, pœnitet, pudet, tædet*, are followed by an Accusative of the *person* affected, and a Genitive of the *thing* which is the origin of those feelings; as

<i>Tui te nec miseret, nec pudet;</i>	You neither pity nor are ashamed of yourself.
<i>Me civitātis morum piget tædetque;</i>	I am grieved for, and weary of, the manners of the city.

1. The Infinitive, or part of a sentence, sometimes supplies the place of the Genitive; as "*Te id pœnit facere.*"

2. *Pudītum est* and *pœtæsum est*, are used in the Passive Voice, governing an Accusative of the person and a Genitive of the thing, or followed by an Infinitive; as "*Atticum nunquam suscepti negotiī pœtæsum est.*" "*Cūm pœdret vivos, tantum pudīturum esset mortuos.*"

8. *Interest* and *refert* are used with a Genitive of the person interested, or with the Accusative Plural of the Possessives *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, instead of *mei, tui, sui, &c.*; as

<i>Interest magistrātūs tuērī bonos;</i>	It concerns the magistrate to defend the good.
<i>Tua refert seipsum nōsse;</i>	It concerns you to know yourself.

1. The Possessives *mea, tua, sua*, &c. may have a Genitive of the Substantive to agree with them in sense; as "*Interest mea oratoris*;" It is the interest of me as an orator.

2. *Refert tua* signifies *ad tua negotia*, or *commoda*. *Interest mea* is resolved into *interest inter mea*. *Refert* is more frequently used with *mea, tua, sua*, than with a Genitive of a person.

a. Interest and *refert* are frequently followed by *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris, quanticunque, tantidem*; and sometimes by the Neuters *tantum, quantum, magnum, plurimum*, to express the *degree* of interest; as

<i>Tanti refert honesta agere</i> ;	Of such concern is it to do
	honest things.

The Dative after the Verb.

All Transitive Verbs require the *immediate object* of an action to be in the Accusative Case, but the *remoter object*, or that *to* or *for* which any thing is done, or *from* which any thing is taken away, to be in the Dative Case; as

<i>Dedit mihi librum</i> ;	He gave the book to me.
<i>Mea mihi ademerunt</i> ;	They took my property from
	me.

To and *for*, in the sense of acquisition, are the usual signs of the Dative. But "*To*, after *attinet, pertinet, spectat*, and after Verbs of *calling, exhorting, inviting, provoking, speaking*, is made by *ad*. *To* and *for*, after *motion, born, fit, prone, ready*, are made by *ad* or *in*. *For*, signifying *on account of*, is a sign of the Ablative, or it may be expressed by *ob, propter, de, proæ, or pro*. *For*, before a word of *price*, is a sign of the Ablative, signifying *exchange, reward, or instead of*, is made by *pro*."^{*}

The Verbs belonging to this Rule are the following:—

1. Verbs of *comparing, giving, adding, and taking away, restoring and denying, promising and paying, declaring, informing, or explaining*, have, if Transitive, both a Dative and an Accusative; but if Intransitive, a Dative only; as

<i>Parvis componere magna</i> ;	To compare great things with
	small.
<i>Consilium vobis dabo</i> ;	I will give you advice.
<i>Neget quis carmina Gallo</i> ?	Who can refuse verses to
	Gallus?
<i>Æs alienum mihi numeravit</i> ;	He paid me the debt.
<i>Dic mihi</i> ;	Tell me.

1. Verbs of *comparing*, namely, *comparo, compono*, and *confero*, have frequently an Ablative with *cum*; as "*Dicta cum factis componere*." Sometimes an Accusative with *ad* and *inter*; as "*Si ad eum comparatur, nihil est*."

2. Verbs of *taking away* have frequently an Ablative with *a, ab, de, e, ex*; as "*Eripite nos ex miseria*."

3. Verbs of *joining, conceding, delivering up*, belong to this Rule.

2. Verbs signifying *advantage* or *disadvantage*; *pleasure* or *displeasure*; *favour*, *help*, or *injury*; *trust* or *distrust*; *command*, *resistance*, or *obedience*; *threatening*, or *being angry with*; *studying*, *healing*, and the Verbs *nubo* and *parco*, are generally Intransitive Verbs governing only a Dative; as

Non potes <i>mihi</i> commodāre;	You cannot serve me.
Placuisse <i>tibi</i> ;	To have pleased you.
Ne crede <i>colōri</i> ;	Trust not to beauty.
Imperat <i>ventis</i> ;	He commands the winds.
Irascor <i>amicis</i> ;	I am angry with my friends.
Studēre <i>grammāticæ</i> ;	To study grammar.
Medēri <i>morbo</i> ;	To heal a disease.
Venus nupsit <i>Vulcāno</i> ;	Venus was married to Vulcan.
<i>Victis</i> parcere;	To spare the conquered.

a. But these Verbs govern an Accusative: *juvo*, *lædo*, *offendo*, *delecto*, *rego*, and *guberno*. The Verbs *tempero* and *moderor*, signifying "to bound, to moderate," have a Dative; signifying to "regulate and arrange," an Accusative. *Dominor* has a Dative or Genitive, or an Accusative with a Preposition. *Impero* has an Accusative of the thing *wanted*; as "*Cæsar obsides imperat*."

1. To the Verbs enumerated as governing the Dative, may be added Verbs of *gratification*, *consent*, *flattering* or *flattery*, *allurement*, *discouragement*, *impartiality*, *incivility*, *detraction*, *reproach*, *endurance*, *forbearance*, *congratulation*, *caution*, *apprehension*, *grudging*, *envy*, *malice*, *introducing*, *persuading*, and *undecieving*.

2. Many Verbs, when used with different significations, are followed by different cases; thus "*Caveo tibi*;" I provide, or am concerned for thy safety: but "*Caveo te*, or *a te*;" I avoid thee, am on my guard against thee. "*Metuo, timeo tibi*;" I am alarmed on thy account: but "*Metuo* or *timeo te*;" I fear thee. "*Consulo tibi*," (*prospicio, provideo*;) I provide for thy interests: but "*Consulo te*;" I ask thy advice. "*Soleo tibi pecuniam*;" I pay money to thee: but "*Soleo te*;" I free thee (as from fear).

3. Some Verbs have the same signification, even when used with different cases; as *Accidit auribus*, or *accidit ad aures*. *Confidēre rei alicui*, or *re aliquid*, or *in re aliquid*.

3. Verbs compounded with the Adverbs *benè*, *malè*, and *satis*; and with these Prepositions, *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *sub*, *super*, have generally a Dative Case; if Transitives, with an Accusative also; but if Intransitives, without it; as

Dî <i>tibi</i> benefician;	May the gods do good to thee.
Adspirat fortuna <i>labōri</i> ;	Fortune favours our enterprise.
Impendet <i>omnibus</i> periculum;	Danger hangs over all.
Postpono <i>famæ</i> pecuniam;	I regard money less than reputation.

1. *Adpergo* and *inpergo*, *circumdo* and *circumfundo*, *dono* and *impertio*, *exuo* and *induo*, are used either with an Accusative of the thing and a Dative of the person, or with an Accusative of the person and an Ablative of the thing. "*Interdico*," I forbid, governs a Dative of the person, and an Ablative of the thing prohibited; as "*Interdico tibi domo meâ*," I forbid thee my house.

2. Some Intransitive Verbs, when compounded with Prepositions, become Transitive, and take only an Accusative; as *adorior*, *aggredior*, *alluo*, *invado*, *ineo*, *præcedo*, *obeo*, *oppeto*, *adeo*, and *convenio*; *egredior* and *excedo*, (to transgress); and particularly words compounded with *circum*, *præter*, and *trans*.

3. Others again, as the following, have, with the same sense, sometimes a Dative and sometimes an Accusative,—*antecedere*, *antecellere*, *antefere*, *præcurrere*, *præire*, *prægrædi*, *præstare*, *præstolari*, *prævertere*, *allatrare*, *adjacere*, *illudere*, *inuitare*, *obtrectare*. *Præcedere* has commonly the Accusative, *excellere* only the Dative. *Despero*, when Transitive, governs an Accusative; when Intransitive, either a Dative or an Ablative with *de*. *Præire*, to precede, has an Accusative; but when it signifies "to rehearse words to be repeated by another," it has a Dative; as "*Præire militibus sacramentum*." *Attendo* and *deficio* have both a Dative and an Accusative.

4. Compound Verbs that have a Transitive signification solely from being joined to Prepositions, cannot be used as the Nominative in the Passive; thus we can say, "*præterfuisse urbem*," but not "*urbs præterfuitur*."

a. In prose, the Preposition used in Compound Verbs is frequently repeated with its proper case, and particularly with Verbs compounded with *ad*, *con*, *de*, *in*; as

Conferte hanc pacem cum | Compare this peace with that
illo bello; | war.

1. *Incumbo*, signifying "to lean or press upon," has a Dative; signifying "applying to a pursuit," is followed by *ad* or *in*.

2. Many Verbs, compounded with *ab*, *de*, and *ex*, take the Ablative, either with or without the repetition of the Preposition; such as *abesse*, *absistere*, *abstinere*, *abire*, *exire*, *decedere*, *excedere*, *deficere*, *depellere*, *efferre*, *evadere*.

4. *Certo*, *congrédior*, and *pugno*, have a Dative with the poets; as

Frigida pugnabant calidis; | Cold things contended with hot.

In prose writers, these Verbs are used with *cum* and an Ablative. *Misceo* has both a Dative and an Ablative in prose. *Loquor*, in prose, takes *cum*.

5. *Sum*, used for *habeo*, or followed in English by *of* or *to*, has a Dative; as

Est mihi pater; | A father is to me; that is, I
| have a father.

Exitium pecõri est; | It is destruction to the flock.

1. *Sum*, signifying *ability* or *readiness* for any thing, and sometimes when the Adjectives *idoneus*, *aptus*, &c. are understood, requires a Dative; as "*Sum oneri ferendo*;" I am capable of bearing the burden.

2. *Deft* and *suppetit* have a Dative; as "*Lac mihi non æstivæ novum, non frigore defit*;" New milk is not wanting to me either in summer or in winter. "*Cui rerum suppetit usus*;" Who has a sufficiency.

3. To this Rule may be referred the form of *naming*; as "*Est mihi nomen Petro, Patri, or Petrus*;" My name is Peter, or the name is to me Peter. The Dative of the name is more common than either the Nominative or Genitive; as "*Nomen Acturo est mihi*."

6. The compounds of *sum*, except *possum*, have a Dative; as
Mihi nec obest, nec prodest; | It neither hurts nor profits me.
Deest sibi; | He is wanting to himself.

Absum, signifying absence, governs an Ablative with *a* or *ab*.

7. *Sum, do, duco, fio, habeo, proficiscor, relinquo, tribuo, venio, and verto*, may have one Dative of the *person*, and another of the *thing* denoting the *effect, destination, advantage, or disadvantage*; as

- Exitio est mare nautis;* | The sea is as a destruction to the sailors.
Id mihi vitio vertis; | You impute it as a fault to me.

8. The Impersonal Verbs *accidit, benēfit, contingit, convēnit, expēdit, libet, licet, liquet*, and other Impersonals put acquisitively, require a Dative Case; as

- Peccāre nemini licet;* | It is lawful for none to sin.
Mihi haud liquet; | It is not clear to me.

9. The Datives *mihi, tibi, sibi, nobis, vobis*, are frequently added to Verbs in an almost redundant manner; as

- Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo;* | I stab this man with his own sword.

Words thus used, mostly occur in confidential letters, speeches, &c.

- a. The poets also frequently use the Dative of Pronouns instead of the Genitive or Possessive; as "*Ei corpus*" for "*ejus corpus*;" "*Mihi manus*," for "*mea manus*."

The Accusative after the Verb.

1. Active Transitive Verbs, and Deponents having an Active Transitive signification, govern the *object* of an action in the Accusative Case; as

- Pater amat filium;* | The father loves his son.
Spes sola in miseriis hominem consolatur; | Hope alone comforts man in distress.

1. The same sense may be expressed by making the Accusative of an Active the Nominative to a Passive Verb; thus "*Amat filium*," or "*Filius amatur*." It is only this Accusative of the Active which can become a Nominative to a Passive Verb; thus we cannot say, "*Placeor*," I am pleased, but "*placet mihi*," It pleases me; nor "*Creditur filius*," The son is trusted, but "*Creditur filio*," because in the Active we say "*placet mihi*," and "*credit filio*."

2. The Accusative of Personal Pronouns is frequently understood; as "*Eo lavatum*," (*me* understood); "*Nox precipitat*," (*ae* understood.) Sometimes of nouns also; as "*Cum faciam vitalā*," *sacra* being understood.

3. The Accusative of a Verb may be found by asking the question *whom?* or *what?* after the Verb, and the word that answers the question is the Accusative.

2. Neuter Verbs have no Accusative Case, except of words having a signification similar to themselves; as

Vitam jucundam vivere; | To live a pleasant life.

1. Neuter Verbs, signifying to *smell* or *taste* of any thing, as *olère, redolère, capère, respirère*, have an Accusative; as *Olet unguenta; Uva picem respiciens*. So in a metaphorical sense; *Olet peregrinum*. Also *sitire*, to thirst after; *ardère*, to be inflamed with the love of; *cavère*, to guard against, have an Accusative. *Latere* has an Accusative of the person; as "*Res latuit patrem*."

2. Sometimes other Neuter Verbs assume an active signification; as "*Horreo tenebras*."

3. The Neuters of Pronouns are frequently joined to Intransitives with which the Accusatives of Nouns cannot stand; as *Hoc lætor; Id tibi assentior*;—so *quid, aliquid, illud, alia, cætera, omnia, utrumque*.

3. Verbs of *teaching, asking, demanding, entreating*, and *inquiring*, and the Verb *celo*, govern two Accusatives, one of the *person* and another of the *thing*; as

<i>Te tua fata docebo;</i>	I will teach you your destiny.
<i>Posce Deos veniam;</i>	Ask pardon of the gods.
<i>Celo te hanc rem;</i>	I conceal this circumstance from you.

1. *Doceo, edoceo*, and *dedoceo*, are the only Verbs of *teaching* which govern two Accusatives, the other Verbs of teaching take an Ablative, sometimes with *in*; as "*erudio, instituo, instruo, imbuo aliquem artibus*;" "*in jure civili*." So also *formo*, and *informo*, signifying to *instruct*. *Erudio*, in the poets, has a double Accusative.

2. *Doceo* and its compounds, in the sense of *giving information*, frequently change the Accusative of the *thing* into an Ablative with *de*; as "*De itinere hostium senatam edocet*."

3. The Verbs of *demanding* and *entreating*, as *posco, reposco, postulo, flagito, oro, rogo, interrogo*, frequently take an Ablative of the *person* with *ab* and *de*; as "*Ab te has literas poscère*;" "those of *inquiring*, as *percontor, quero*, have an Ablative of the *thing* with *de*; as "*percontari aliquem de re*." *Peto*, in the sense of *entreating*, has always an Ablative of the *person* with *ab*; as "*Ab te peto*."

4. *Celo* has sometimes a Dative of the *person*, and sometimes an Accusative of the *person* and an Ablative of the *thing* governed by *de*.

5. *Consulo*, in the sense of *ask advice* or *propose for deliberation*, has sometimes, though rarely, a double Accusative; as "*Nec te id consulo*."

4. The same Verbs (of *teaching, asking, &c.* and the Verb *celo*), require in the Passive an Accusative of the *thing*; as

<i>Rogātus est sententiam;</i>	He was asked his opinion.
<i>Id celabar;</i>	I was kept from the knowledge of that thing.

5. Verbs signifying *name* or *title, election* or *appointment, estimation* or *opinion*, have two Accusatives in the Active Voice; as

<i>Romulus urbem quam condidit Romam vocavit;</i>	Romulus named the city which he built, Rome.
---	--

So *præsto* and *præbeo*, signifying *show, prove one's self*, have two Accusatives; as "*Præbe te hominem*."

6. *Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet*, govern the Accusative of the person with an Infinitive; as

Non decet te risāri;

| It does not become you to scold.

Delectat me studēre;

| It delights me to study.

1. *Decet, delectat, juvat*, are frequently used personally; but *oportet* rarely; as "*Literæ me delectārent.*"

2. *Fallit, fugit, præterit, latet*, used impersonally, have an Accusative, and generally with the Infinitive; as "*Fugit me ad te scribēre.*"

7. *Attinet, pertinet, and spectat*, have an Accusative with *ad*; as

Quod ad te attinet;

| Which belongs to you.

The Preposition is, in some few instances, omitted.

The Ablative after the Verb.

1. The *Cause, Instrument, and Manner* of an action, are put in the Ablative; as

Paleo metu;

| I am pale with fear.

Cæsus est virgis;

| He was beaten with rods.

Mirā celeritate rem perēgit;

| He finished the business with wonderful despatch.

1. The Cause is known by putting the question *why?* or *wherefore?* The Instrument by *with what?* or *wherewith?* and the Manner by *how?*

2. The Cause is frequently expressed by *per* and *propter*, with an Accusative, and by *a, ab, de, e, ex, præ*, with an Ablative; as "*Legibus non propter metum paret.*" "*Nec loqui præ timore potuit.*"

3. The Instrument rarely admits the Preposition; thus we do not say "*Scribo cum calāmo,*" but "*Scribo calāmo,*" I write with a pen; nor do we say "*Cum oculis video,*" but "*Oculis video.*" But when the Instrument is used merely as a concomitant, the Preposition is generally expressed; as "*Ingressus est cum gladio,*" he entered with a sword, that is, either in his hand or about him.

4. The Manner is frequently expressed by *a, ab, cum, de, e, ex, per*; as "*Cum vidēret oratōres cum severitate audiri.*" The Substantive expressing manner should generally have an Adjective connected with it; but if there be no Adjective, the Preposition *cum* should always be used; as "*Literæ cum fide scriptæ.*" In some military expressions the word *cum* is frequently omitted; as "*Egressus omnibus copiis.*"

5. The usual signs of the Ablative are *at, by, from, in, on, than, with*, but these words are sometimes applied to other cases; thus *at* and *by*, signifying near, are rendered by *ad, apud, or juxta*. *By*, in beseeching and swearing, is made by *per*. *From*, after Verbs of *differing* and *taking away*, may be made by a Dative. *With*, after Verbs of *anger*, is a sign of the Dative; after Verbs of *comparing* or *contending*, may be made by *cum*.

a. The *Matter* of which a thing is made, is put in the Ablative, with *de, e, ex*; as

Templum de marmōre;

| A temple built of marble.

2. The Ablative is added to Nouns, Verbs, and Participles, to express a *circumstance* by which they are more exactly fixed and defined, where in English the words *in, as to, &c.* would be used; as

Agesilāus claudus fuit altĕro pede; | Agesilaus was lame in one foot.

a. The poets put these limiting expressions in the Accusative, in imitation of the Greeks; as

Nudæ brachia; | Naked as to the arms.

3. Verbs of *buying, selling, valuing, lending, hiring, and esteeming*, take an Ablative of the *substantive*, or *specified price or cost*; as

Æstimo tribus denariis; | I value it at three pence.

a. But these Verbs require a Genitive of the *cost or value* when it is expressed by an *Adjective*; as

Tanti eris aliis, quanti tibi fuĕris; | You will be of as much value to others, as you have been to yourself.

These Adjectives are *magni, permagni, pluris, plurimi, maximī, parvi, minimi, tanti, quanti, tantidem, quantivis, quantilibet, quancunque*.

The words *vili, paulo, parvo, minimo, magno, nimio, plurimo, dimidio, duplo*, are sometimes put by themselves in the Ablative, having the word *pretio* understood; as
Vili venit triticum; | Wheat is sold at a low rate.

b. They are also joined with these Genitives,—*assis, flocci, nauci, nihili, pensi, pili, teruncii, hujus*; as

Me pili æstimat; | He values me at a hair.

4. *Mereor*, connected with the Adverbs *benè, malè, pejùs, optimè, pessimè*, has an Ablative Case with the Preposition *de*; as

De me benè meritus est; | He deserved well of me.

5. Verbs signifying *plenty or want, filling or emptying, loading or unloading*, and also Verbs of *clothing*, require an Ablative Case; as

<i>Abundat divitiis;</i>	He abounds with riches.
<i>Caret omni culpā;</i>	He has no fault.
<i>Implentur vino;</i>	They are filled with wine.
<i>Te mendaciis onerârunt;</i>	They loaded you with calumnies.
<i>Te hoc crimine expĕdi;</i>	Clear yourself of this charge.
<i>Induit se purpurā;</i>	He arrays himself in purple.

1. To this Rule belong the Verbs *privare, spoliare, orbare, fraudare, defraudare, nudare, exuĕre*, and others of a similar meaning.

2. Verbs of *clothing* have, among the poets, sometimes two Accusatives; as "*Induit se calceos;*" He put on his shoes. The Verbs *induo* and *exuo* have sometimes an Accusative of the thing and a Dative of the person; as "*Sibi torquem induit.*"

a. *Egeo, impleo, compleo*, and *indigeo*, sometimes govern a Genitive; as

Implentur <i>vetëris Bacchi</i> ;	They are filled with old wine.
<i>Quorum</i> indiget usus;	Things which utility requires.

6. Verbs of *liberating* or *delivering from*, of *removing*, *keeping at a distance*, *banishing*, or *separating*, require an Ablative Case, either with or without a Preposition; as

Athenienses <i>bello</i> liberati sunt;	The Athenians were freed from war.
Hæc me imago <i>domo meâ</i> pellet;	This image will drive me from my house.
Te <i>fasce</i> levâbo;	I will ease you of your load.
Disjungâmus nos <i>a corpô-ribus</i> ;	Let us separate ourselves from our bodies.

1. After Verbs signifying to be remote from, to keep off, to differ from, not to coincide with; as *discrepo, discordo, differro, disideo, disto, arceo, defendo*, &c. the poets frequently use the Dative instead of an Ablative.

2. When a separation from persons is spoken of, the Preposition *ab* must always be used.

a. *Desino, desisto, abstineo*, have sometimes a Genitive among the poets; as "*Desine querelârûm*," Cease from, or leave off complaints.

7. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior, dignor, lætor, glorior, gaudeo, nitor*, with their compounds *abutor, perfruor, defungor, perfungor*, and the Verbs *muto, communico*, and *superse- deo*, are joined to an Ablative Case; as

Functus est <i>munëre</i> ;	He discharged his office.
<i>Pace</i> frui;	To enjoy peace.
Ut看 <i>sorte tuâ</i> ;	Use your fortune.
<i>Auro</i> potitur;	He takes possession of gold.
Me dignor <i>honöre</i> ;	I think myself worthy of honour.
Mutat quadrata <i>rotundis</i> ;	He changes square things for round.
Cæsar <i>prælio</i> supersedëre statuit.	Cæsar resolved to forbear fighting.

1. Under this rule are included the following; *epulor, delector, vivo, victito, exulto, sto, consto, consisto*, and *laboro*.

2. With *consto, laboro, nitor*, and *glorior*, a Preposition is frequently expressed; as "*Cùm constemus ex animo*."

a. *Potior* frequently governs a Genitive; as "*Potiri rërûm*," to obtain the supreme command. *Utor, fruor, fungor, potior*, and *vescor*, are sometimes found with an Accusative.

8. Verbs or Participles signifying *origin* or *descent*, as *nascor*, *natus*, *ortus*, *prognatus*, *oriundus*, *satus*, *cretus*, *editus*, have an Ablative, either with or without a Preposition; as

<i>Bonis</i> prognata <i>parentibus</i> ;	Born of good parents.
<i>Edita de magno flumine</i> ;	Descended from a great river.

9. A Substantive with a Participle joined with it, or two Substantives with the word *being* understood between them, when they are neither the subject of a Verb, nor governed by any word in the sentence, are put in the *Ablative Absolute*; as

<i>Libertate oppressa</i> , nihil est	Liberty being abolished, we
quod speremus;	have nothing to hope.
<i>Te duce</i> ;	You being leader.

a. The Ablative Absolute is used to specify *time*; as "*Imperante Augusto*." This is frequently rendered into English by *when*, *since*, *while*, *although*.

PASSIVE, NEUTER PASSIVE, AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. With Passive Verbs, the principal *agent*, if a living being, must be put in the Ablative with *a* or *ab*; as

<i>Laudatur ab his</i> ;	He is praised by these.
--------------------------	-------------------------

a. But if the agent after a Passive Verb do not denote a living being, it must be put in the Ablative without *a* or *ab*; as

<i>Cometæ radiis solis obscurantur</i> ;	Comets are obscured by the the rays of the sun.
--	--

1. If this agent be considered by personification as a living being, it will take *a* or *ab*; as "*Hic error a Philosophia pellatur*."

2. *Per* properly denotes the *medium* of some action, which has its source in a remote cause; as "*Per litteras a te sum admonitus*."

b. The Dative is frequently used in poetry, and sometimes in prose, with Passive Verbs, instead of *a* or *ab* with the Ablative; as

<i>Neque cernitur ulli</i> ;	Nor is he seen by any.
<i>Cui non sunt auditæ Demosthenis vigiliæ</i> ?	By whom have not the watchings of Demosthenes been heard of?

2. Neuter Verbs, and also Neuter Passives, as *vapulo*, *veneo*, *liceo*, *exulo*, *fio*, have the same case after them as Passive Verbs have; as

A forti viro cadere;

To fall, or be killed, by a brave man.

A præceptore vapulabis;

You will be beaten by the master.

Ab hoste venire;

To be sold by an enemy.

3. Verbs which govern two Accusatives in the Active Voice, retain *one* in the Passive; and those which govern an Accusative with a Genitive, Dative, or Ablative, retain the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative, in the Passive; as

Deducēberis istos mores;

You shall be untaught those manners.

Accusāris furti;

You are accused of theft.

Habēberis ludibrio;

You will be considered as a laughing-stock.

Privaberis magistratu;

You will be deprived of your office.

Passive Verbs of *clothing*, such as *induor, amicio, cingor, accingor*, also *exuor, diacingor*, and their Participles, are frequently, by the poets, joined to the Accusative; as "*Induitur faciem cultumque Dianæ.*" With prose writers they govern the Ablative; as "*Cingitur gladio.*"

4. Impersonal Verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting after them in their proper Cases, those words which form the Nominative to Regular Verbs; as *Delectat me*, it delights me, or I delight; *placet tibi*, it pleases thee, or thou pleasest; *pugnātur a militibus*, it is fought by the soldiers, or the soldiers fight.

1. Passive Impersonals take after them the case of their Personals, with the exception of the Accusative of the Active Voice; as "*Ut maioribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicum misereatur. Favetur mihi.*"

2. Most Neuter Verbs may be used Impersonally in the Passive Voice; as "*Non invidetur illi ætati, sed etiam favetur.*"

GOVERNMENT AND USE OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

1. Participles, Gerunds, and the Supine in *um*, govern the same Case as their Verbs; as

Amans virtutem;

Loving virtue.

Carens fraude;

Wanting deceit.

Cupīdus utendi tempore;

Desirous of employing my time.

Scitātum oracula;

To consult the oracle.

1. *Verbal* Nouns sometimes govern the case of the Verbs from which they are derived; as "*Justitia est obtemperatio legibus.*"

2. Participles used as Adjectives (generally ending in *ns*) follow the rules of Adjectives.

2. *Exōsus*, *perōsus*, and frequently *pertāsus*, have an Active signification, and govern the Accusative; as

Tædas exōsa jugales; | Hating marriage.

1. *Pertāsus*, used Impersonally, governs the Genitive; as "*Pertāsum leviātia.*"

2. *Exosus* and *perosus*, signifying Passively, are stated in the Eton Grammar as governing a Dative; thus "*Germāni Romānis perosi sunt; Exosus Deo.*"

3. Participles denote the *time* of an event, and are used in the sense of *as*, *when*, *although*; as

Curio, ad focum sedenti, | The Samnites brought gold to
aurum Samnītes attulērunt; | Curius, as he sat near his
| fire-place.

The Participle is frequently used instead of the Infinitive after Verbs of *hearing*, *seeing*, and others of a similar meaning; as "*Audivi eum canentem,*" I heard him singing.

4. A Substantive with a Perfect Passive Participle, or with a Future Perfect Passive, is used instead of two Substantives; as

Post natum Christum; | After the birth of Christ.

5. The Participle in *rus* is used after Verbs of motion, to denote the *purpose*; as

Pergit consulturus; | He goes to consult.

a. Instead of this Participle, the Supine in *um*, the Subjunctive with *qui* or *ut*, and the Gerund in *dum* with *ad*, may be used,—as *pergit consultum*, or *ut consulēret*, or *ad consulendum*.

6. The Participle Future in *dus*, *da*, *dum*, denotes *duty* or *necessity*, and requires the *object* on which the duty or necessity rests, to be in the Dative Case; as

<i>Mihi exorandus;</i>	To be prevailed on by me.
<i>Diligentia nobis est semper adhibenda;</i>	Diligence must always be em- ployed by us.
<i>Suo cuique judicio utendum est;</i>	Each must use his own judg- ment.

1. The Dative is frequently understood; as "*Eundum est,*" (understand *nobis*.)

2. The Nenter of this Participle, with *est*, retains the government of the Verb; as "*Studendum est literis,*" one must attend to literature. But when the Verb has an entire Passive, the Participle is made to agree with its Substantive; as "*Virtus est amanda,*" and not "*Amandum est virtutem.*"

3. *A*, with the Ablative, is sometimes found with this Participle; as "*Hæc a me in dicendo prætereunda non sunt.*"

7. The Participle in *dus* is also used instead of an Infinitive, after *curo*, *do*, *trado*, *mitto*, *permitto*, *accipio*, *suscipio*, and similar Verbs, to express the *purpose* or *object*; as

Caesar legātis impērat, utī naves aedificandas curārent;	Caesar commands the lieutenants to cause ships to be built.
---	---

GERUNDS.

1. The Gerund in *dī* is used as a Genitive, governed by Substantives and Relative Adjectives; as

Tempus <i>legendi</i> ;	The time of reading.
Studiōsus <i>audiendi</i> ;	Desirous of hearing.

This Gerund is sometimes construed with the Genitive Plural; as "*Facultas agrorum condonandi*," for *agros*. It is sometimes also joined with the Genitive of Pronouns, with which the Participle cannot agree; as "*In castra venerunt sui purgandi causā*."

2. The Gerund in *do* of the Dative Case is governed by Adjectives which require a Dative, particularly by those denoting *useful, fit, hurtful, like, and unlike*; as

Utilis <i>scribendo</i> ;	Useful for writing.
---------------------------	---------------------

1. The Adjective is sometimes understood; as "*Cūm solvendo civitātes non essent*;" that is, "*pares solvendo*."

2. The Gerund in *do* sometimes depends on a Verb; as "*Epidicum quarrendo operam dabo*."

3. Gerunds have sometimes a Passive sense; as "*Aqua nitrosa utilis est bibendo*."

a. Many of these Adjectives, however, take *ad* with the Gerund in *dum*, to express *purpose or design*; as

Aptus <i>ad videndum</i> ;	Proper to see.
----------------------------	----------------

3. The Gerund in *do* of the Ablative is used as an Ablative of the *cause or manner*; also with the Prepositions *a, ab, de, e, ex, in*; as

Defessus sum <i>ambulando</i> ;	I am weary with walking.
Memoria <i>excolendo</i> augētur;	The memory is improved by exercising it.
Pœna <i>a peccando</i> absterret;	Punishment frightens from sinning.

4. The Gerund in *dum* is used as an Accusative, governed by the Preposition *ad* or *inter*; as

Promptus <i>ad audiendum</i> ;	Ready to hear.
Attentus <i>inter docendum</i> ;	Attentive in time of teaching.

This Gerund is sometimes governed by *ante, circa, or ob*; as "*Ante domandum*."

5. Those Gerunds which govern Substantives in the Accusative Case, are generally turned into the Participle in *dus*, which agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case; thus

Instead of using the Gerund and saying,—

1. *Discendum* est literas,
2. Cupidus *discendi* literas,
3. *Ad discendum* literas,
4. *In discendo* literas,

It is better to use the Participle, and say,—

1. *Literæ* sunt *discendæ*.
2. Cupidus *discendārum* *literārum*.
3. *Ad literas* *discendas*.
4. *In literis* *discendis*.

The Gerunds of those Verbs which do not govern the Accusative, are not changed into the Participle in *dus*; thus we must say, "*Parcendum est inimicis*," and not "*Inimici sunt parcendi*," We must spare our enemies. But the Verbs *utor*, *abutor*, *frutor*, *fungor*, and *potior*, though they do not govern the Accusative, yet change their Gerunds into the Participle in *dus*; as "*Justitiæ fruendæ causâ*."

SUPINES.

1. The Supine in *um* is put after a Verb of *motion* to express the *object*; as

Spectātum veniunt; | They come to see.

1. This Supine is sometimes put after Verbs which do not strictly denote motion; as "*Do filiam nuptum*."

2. Instead of the Supine in *um*, we may use the Gerunds, Participles in *dus* and *rus*, or *ut* with a Subjunctive; as "*Eo spectatum, ad spectandum, spectandi causâ, ludorum spectandorum causâ* or *gratiâ, ad spectandos ludos, spectaturus, and ut spectem*."

2. The Supine in *u* is used after such Adjectives as—*hard*, *easy*, *honest*, *disagreeable*, *useful*, *wonderful*, and the like; and also after *fas*, *nefas*, and *opus*; as

Difficile dictu est; | It is hard to say.
Si hoc fas est dictu; | If this is proper to be said.

Only a few Supines are used in this way; as *dictu*, *auditu*, *cognitu*, *factu*, *invenitu*. *Ad* and the Gerund, or *sum* and the Infinitive, are generally used with *facilis*, *difficilis*, and *jucundus*.

TIME, SPACE, MEASURE, AND PLACE.

1. Nouns denoting a *point* of Time, answering to the question *when?* are put in the Ablative without a Preposition; as

Venit horâ *tertiâ*; | He came at the third hour.

1. The time *before* and time *after* are expressed by *ante* and *post*, with an Ablative; as "*Tribus annis post* decessit," or "*Tribus post annis*;" or by an Accusative; as "*Post tres annos*," or "*Tres post annos*."

2. *Quâm*, followed by a Verb, is used with *ante* and *post* in different ways; thus "*Tribus annis* (or *tertio anno*) *postquâm* venerat;" "*Post tres annos quâm* (or *post annum tertium quâm*) *venerat*." Sometimes *post* is omitted; as "*Tertio anno quâm* *venerat*."

3. The *point* or *part* of time is sometimes expressed by the Prepositions *in*, *de*, *ad*, *per*, *intra*; as "*In tempore* *veni*;" "*Surgant de nocte* *latrones*."

2. Nouns denoting the *duration* of Time, answering to the question *how long?* are put in the Accusative, generally without a Preposition; as

Flet noctem; | She bewails all the night.

1. The Ablative is sometimes, though rarely, used with *duration* of time; as "*Vixit annis viginti novem.*"

2. The Prepositions *per*, *ad*, *ante*, *in*, *intra*, are frequently expressed; as "*Per annos decem.*," "*Intra annos quatuordecim.*"

3. *Abhinc*, denoting *duration*, has an Accusative; as "*Abhinc annos tres.*," denoting a *point* of time, it has an Ablative; as "*Abhinc triginta diebus.*"

4. *Old* is rendered by *natus* with an Accusative of the time; as "*Decessit Alexander mensem unum, annos tres et triginta natus.*"

3. Nouns denoting *space*, *distance*, and *measure*, answering to the question *how far?* are generally put in the Accusative, but sometimes in the Ablative; as

<i>Mille passus processeram;</i>	I had advanced a mile.
<i>Abest ab urbe quingentis</i>	He is distant from the city
<i>millibus passuum;</i>	five hundred miles.

1. One of the Substantives expressing *distance* is sometimes omitted; as "*Castra aberant bidui.*" *spatium* being understood.

2. The word denoting *distance* is governed in the Accusative by *ad* or *per* understood, and in the Ablative by *a* or *ab*.

a. The *excess* or *deficiency* of Measure or Distance, answering to the question *how much more?* or *how much less?* is always put in the Ablative; as

<i>Superat capite;</i>	He is taller by the head.
------------------------	---------------------------

4. *In* or *at* a town or city, answering to the question *where?* is put in the *Genitive*, if the Noun be of the First or Second Declension and *Singular* Number; but in the *Ablative* without a Preposition, if the Noun be of the Third Declension, or in the *Plural* Number; as

<i>Quid Romæ faciam?</i>	What shall I do at Rome?
<i>Mortuus est Londini;</i>	He died in London.
<i>Habitabat Carthagine;</i>	He dwelt at Carthage.
<i>Studuit Athēnis;</i>	He studied at Athens.

1. The words *urbs*, *oppidum*, *locus*, when in apposition to names of towns, as the place where any thing occurs, may be in the Ablative without *in*, though the name of the place be in the Genitive; as "*Archias Antiochiæ natus est, celebri urbe.*"

2. The Ablative is governed by *in*, which is sometimes expressed; the Genitive depends on *in urbe*.

3. The names of towns of the First and Second Declensions are sometimes, though rarely, found in the Ablative; as "*Pons, quem ille Abgdo fecerat.*"

4. *Ad*, denoting *near* a place, is expressed by *ad*; as "*Bellum quod ad Trojam gesserat.*" "*Ad Romam ire.*" to go towards Rome.

5. *To* a town, answering to the question *whither?* is put in the Accusative; *from* or *through* a town, answering to the question *whence?* is put in the Ablative, without Prepositions; as

<i>Carthāginem rediit;</i>	He returned to Carthage.
<i>Accēpi Romā literas;</i>	I have received a letter from Rome.
<i>Iter Laodicēā faciebam;</i>	I was passing through Laodicea.

1. The Preposition is used if the name of the city has an Adjective; as "*Proficisci ad doctas Athēnas.*" So also if *oppidum*, *urbs*, &c. precedes the proper name; as "*Ad urbem Ancyram; ex urbe Romā.*"

2. Motion *by* or *through* a town is generally expressed by the Preposition *per*; as "*Cūm iter per Thebas faceret.*"

a. The names of towns, and frequently of small islands, are used after Verbs of motion or of rest, *without a Preposition*; as

<i>Athēnas</i> proficiscebantur;	They went to Athens.
<i>Lesbi</i> vixit;	He lived at Lesbos.

b. But the names of countries, provinces, islands, villages, mountains, rivers, seas, woods, and all other places, except towns and small islands, have the Preposition generally *expressed*; as

Natus <i>in Italiā, in Latio,</i>	He was born in Italy, in La-
<i>in urbe;</i>	tium, in a city.
Abiit <i>in Italiam, in Latium,</i>	He has gone to Italy, to La-
<i>in urbem;</i>	tium, to a city.

1. It is a violation of the Rule, when the names of countries, &c. are used without Prepositions, or the names of cities with *in*, *ab*, *ex*. By the poets, however, the names of nations are frequently used without a Preposition; as "*Hinc idēmus Afros.*"

2. *Peto*, signifying *I make for, I go to*, always governs the Accusative without a Preposition; as "*Ægyptum petere* decrevit."

3. The Ablative, without a Preposition, is used with several general designations of place; as "*Terrā marique,*" by sea and land. We also say *loco* and *locis*, when joined with Adjectives and Pronouns; as "*Hoc loco,*" "*multis locis.*"

6. *Domus* and *rus*, like the names of towns, are used in the Accusative after Verbs of motion, and in the Ablative after *in*, *at*, *from*, without Prepositions; as "*Ite domum,*" ("*domos,*" if more than one.) Go home; "*Abiit rus,*" He has gone into the country. "*Domo*" and "*rure,*" *from* home, *from* the country; "*domi*" and "*ruri,*" or "*rure,*" *at* home, *in* the country.

1. *Ruri*, in the country, is more frequent than *rure*.

2. *Domi* is used only when joined with the Adjectives *meæ, tuæ, suæ, nostræ, vestræ, alienæ*. With other Adjectives, *domo*, generally with the Preposition *in*, is used for *domi*; as "*In domo paternā,*" and not "*domi paternæ.*"

3. When *domus* is followed by a Genitive denoting the possessor, either *domi* or *in domo* may be used; as "*Deprehensus est domi,*" or "*in domo Cæsāria.*"

4. *Rura*, in the plural, is preceded by a Preposition.

a. *Humi, belli, militiæ*, are used in the Genitive both with Verbs of motion and rest; as

Unā <i>militiæ</i> et <i>domi</i> fuimus;	We were together in war and
	at home.
<i>Humi</i> jacēre;	To lie on the ground.

ADVERBS.

1. Adverbs of *time*, *place*, and *quantity*, govern a Genitive; as

Ubi *gentium*?

Where in the world?

Eò *impudentiæ* ventum est;

They have arrived at such a degree of impudence.

Pridie *ejus diēi*;

The day before that day.

Satis *eloquentiæ*, *sapientiæ* parum;

Eloquence enough, but little wisdom.

1. Adverbs of *time* are *nunc*, *tunc*, *tum*, *interea*, *pridie*, *postridie*, &c.—of *place*, *ubi*, *ubinam*, *unde*, *nuquam*, *eò*, *eodē*, *longē*, *quò*, *ubivis*, *hucine*, &c.—of *quantity*, *parum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *satis*, *abundē*, *affatim*, *partim*, &c.

2. *Minimē gentium* is a strong negation,—not in the least.

3. *Pridiē* and *postridiē* have an Accusative as well as a Genitive; as "*Pridiē Kalendas, Nonas, Idus*," that is, "*Pridiē ante Kalendas*, &c."—" *Postridiē Kalendas*," that is, "*Postridiē post Kalendas*."

4. The Ordinal Numerals also have a Genitive or Accusative of the *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*; as "*Quarto Nonas; Tertio Nonarum*," on the third day before the nones.

2. *Aliter* and *secus* have frequently an Ablative; as "*Multo aliter*," much otherwise; "*Paulo secus*," little otherwise.

3. *Ergò*, for the sake of, *instar*, as great as, equal to, and the Substantives *causā* and *gratiā*, require a Genitive Case; as

Virtutis ergò;

For the sake of virtue.

Instar montis equum;

A horse as big as a mountain.

Honoris causā;

For the sake of honour.

4. a. Derivative Adverbs, used as Adjectives, govern the same Case as their Primitive Adjectives. b. Adverbs derived from Verbs compounded with Prepositions, and also *obviām*, to meet, and *præstò*, at hand, govern a Dative; as

a. *Optimē omnium*;

The best of all.

a. *Proximē castris*;

Near the camp.

b. *Naturæ* convenienter vivere;

To live agreeably to nature.

b. *Præstò esse amicis*;

To be ready (to serve) our friends.

b. *Huic* *obviām* processit;

He went to meet him.

5. Two Negatives in the same clause are equal to an Affirmative in Latin, as in English; as

Non sum nescius;

I am not ignorant, or I know.

Non nemo, (that is, *quidam*);

Some one.

a. In many instances two Negatives convey the assertion more faintly than an Affirmative mode of expression; as

Non parere noluít; | He did not refuse to obey.

Nullus and *neque* are sometimes found implying negation; as "*Nulla neque armem libavit quadrupes.*" In old writers also, two negatives are sometimes used to render the negation stronger; as "*Jura, te non nociturum homini hác de re nemini,*" (for *nulli homini.*)

PREPOSITIONS.

1. These Prepositions govern the Accusative: *ad, adversus, ante, apud, &c.*; as

Ante pedes; | Before the feet.

2. These Prepositions govern the Ablative: *a, ab, abs, absque, coram, &c.*; as

Coram omnibus; | In the presence of all.

3. *Versus* and *tenus* are placed after the Noun; as "*Londinum versus,*" towards London; "*Océano tenus,*" as far as the ocean.

Tenus governs the Genitive Case of the Plural Number; as "*Crurum tenus,*" Up to the legs.

4. *In, sub, subter, super,* signifying motion to a place, govern an Accusative; as

In urbem ire; | To go into the city.
Sub mœnia tendit; | He goes under the walls.

a. Motion or rest in a place is denoted by *in* and *sub* with an Ablative; *super* has either the Accusative or Ablative in this sense; *subter* generally the Accusative; as

Sedeo, or discuro in scholâ; | I sit, or run up and down in the school.
Sub terrâ habitâre; | To live under the earth.
Sedens super arma; | Sitting above the arms.
Subter fastigia duxit; | He led them under the roof.

5. *In* signifying into, to, tending to, towards, against, until, according, for, over, upon, through, and by, (expressive of time,) governs an Accusative; signifying in, on, at, among, in the case of, an Ablative.

In is used with an Ablative after the Verbs *pono, loco, colloco, consido*; with an Accusative after *advento* and *advento*, though they have *in* or *at* in English.

6. *Sub*, referring to time, governs an Accusative; as "*Sub noctem,*" at night-fall.

Super, signifying *above, beyond, over and above*, governs an Accusative; signifying *upon, for the sake of, concerning*, an Ablative.

Prepositions are frequently understood; as "*Meum casum doluerunt*;" that is, "*propter meum casum*," &c.

7. Prepositions combined with Verbs frequently govern the same Case as when they are separately used; as

<i>Alloquor te;</i>	I speak to you.
<i>Cælo demittitur;</i>	He is sent down from heaven.
<i>Servitio exire;</i>	To depart from slavery.

a. This Rule is not applicable to Compounds governing a Dative, but only to such as can admit the Preposition, without injuring the sense, to be separated from the Verb, and placed before the Case by itself; as "*Loquor ad te*;" "*De cælo mittitur*;" "*Ex servitio ire*."

b. Verbs compounded with *a, ab, de, e, ex*, and such compounds of *ad, con, in*, as do not govern a Dative, frequently have the Preposition *repeated* with its proper Case; as

<i>Abstinuērunt a vino;</i>	They abstained from wine.
<i>Ad te accēdo;</i>	I come to thee.

1. Some Verbs, compounded with *e* or *ex*, are followed by an Accusative or Ablative; as "*Exire limen*," "*Eyredi portubus*."

2. These Verbs never repeat the Preposition after them: *affaris, allatro, alluo, accolo, circumvenio, circumceo, circumsto, circumstodeo, circumstolo, oboeo, prætereo, abdicō, effero, evertō*. The compounds of *præter* also generally omit the Preposition.

3. The Noun to which the Preposition in composition refers, is sometimes implied; as "*Submittite tauros*," (that is, *sub jugo*) put your steers under the yoke.

4. Prepositions in composition serve to augment, diminish, or in some manner to modify the meaning of the simple word, as in the following instances:

Ad signifies *approximation*; as "*accipio*," I take to myself: or *increase*; as "*adamo*," to love much.

Ob, in composition, sometimes means *before*; as "*ruo*," to rush; "*obruo*," to rush before, or overwhelm: sometimes it *strengthens* the signification; as "*dormio*," to sleep; "*obdormio*," to sleep soundly.

Per, *increases*; as "*gratus*," agreeable; "*pergratus*," very agreeable: or expresses *transition*; as "*do*," to give; "*perdo*," to give thoroughly, to give without hopes of recall, and so to *lose*:* or *privation*; as "*perfidus*," perfidious.

Post implies *behind*; as "*pono*," to place; "*postpono*," to place behind: also of *inferiority*; as "*habeo*," to have esteem; "*posthabeo*," to esteem less.

A, ab, abs, in composition, signify *privation or separation*; as "*duco*," to lead; "*abduco*," to lead away; "*moveo*," to move; "*amoveo*," to remove.

Cum signifies *society, participation, accompaniment*, and is frequently changed into *com, con, co, col*.

De serves to *augment* the simple word; as "*finio*," to bound; "*definio*," to bound completely; or to *diminish*; as "*facio*," to do; "*deficio*," to do less than one ought; or to express *privation*; as "*deferreo*," to cool; "*demens*," mad.

Ex signifies *out*, and hence may be derived its significations of *privation*, or *negation*, *elevation*, &c. thus "*armo*," to arm; "*exarmare*," to deprive of arms; "*sanguis*," blood; "*exanguis*," bloodless; "*levo*," to lighten; "*elevo*," to lighten thoroughly, to elevate.

Præ, signifies *precedence*, *prevention*; as "*dicere*," to tell, "*prædicere*," to foretell; "*claudere*," to shut; "*præcludere*," to shut out. In Adjectives it *augments*; as "*præfacilis*," very easy.

Pro signifies *advancing*; as "*moveo*," I move; "*promoveo*," I move forward; or *substitution*; as "*nomen*," a noun; "*pronomen*," a word instead of a noun, a pronoun; or *presence* or *publicity*; as "*voco*," to call; "*provoco*," to call before the public, to challenge. It is sometimes *privative*; as "*profanus*," profane.

In has numerous meanings. 1. It *augments*; as "*induro*," I harden much. 2. It signifies *control*; as "*habeo*," to have; "*inhibeo*," to have within command. 3. *Approximation*; as "*duco*," to lead; "*induco*," to lead into. 4. With Adjectives it is generally "*privative*," as "*ingratus*," ungrateful.

Sub generally *lessens*; as "*timeo*," to fear; "*subtimeo*," to fear a little; or *deprives*; as "*subduci*," to be withdrawn.

Other Prepositions, in composition, generally retain the signification of the simple word when separately used.

CONJUNCTIONS.

Copulative and Disjunctive Conjunctions connect, in the same *mood* and *tense*, two or more *Verbs* which are similarly situated with respect to time and circumstance; as

Nec scribit nec legit; | He neither writes nor reads.

They also connect, in the same *case*, two or more *Nouns* and *Pronouns*, depending on the same Verb or Preposition; as "*Socrâtes docuit Xenophontem et Platōnem*."

a. But sometimes the Nouns themselves require different Cases; as "*Vixi Romæ et Athenis*."

1. Not only the Copulative Conjunctions, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *que*, *etiam*, &c. and the Disjunctive, *aut*, *vel*, *ve*, *seu*, *sive*, *nec*, &c. but also *quâm*, *nisi*, *præterquam*, *nempe*, *licet*, *quâvis*, *nequum*, and the Adverbs of Likeness; as *ut*, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasi*, &c. belong to this rule.

2. Some Conjunctions are followed by a corresponding word; thus, *tamen* answers to *etiam*; or *quâvis*; *quâm*, to *tam*; *ut* to *ita*, or *tam*, or *adeo*; *quâm* to *ante* and *præ*. Sometimes the corresponding Conjunctions are omitted.

3. For the influence which different Conjunctions have on certain Verbs, see the *Use of Moods and Tenses*.

INTERJECTIONS.

1. *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are followed by an Accusative or a Vocative; as

<i>O fallacem hominum spem!</i>	O deceitful hope of men!
<i>Heu me infelicem;</i>	Ah! wretched me!
<i>Proh sancte Jupiter!</i>	O sacred Jupiter!

1. These Interjections are sometimes joined to the Nominative; as "*O vir fortis!*" *Heu* has sometimes a Dative; as "*Heu misero mihi!*"

2. The Interjections are sometimes understood; as "*Hominem probum!*"

3. *Ah* and *oah* are followed by an Accusative and a Vocative; *hem* by a Dative, Accusative, or Vocative.

a. The Vocative is used with nearly all Interjections.

2. *Hei* and *væ* govern a Dative; as

Hei mihi!

| Woe is me!

Væ misero mihi!

| Wretched man that I am!

3. *En* and *ecce* generally require a Nominative case, but sometimes an Accusative; as

En Priāmus!

| See Priam!

Ecce homīnem!

| Behold the man!

USE OF THE MOODS.

Indicative Mood.

1. The Indicative Mood is used when we speak of a thing *absolutely* and with *certainty*; as *Scribo*, I write; *docebat*, he was teaching.

1. Hence, though the Verb may be preceded by the particles *etsi*, *tametsi*, *quāquam*, *si*, *nisi*, &c. and interrogatives, yet when it is used directly as denoting some *fact*, it must be in the Indicative; as "*Quamvis credo*," though I believe; "*Quando rediisti*?" When didst thou return?—But all these particles, under other circumstances, hereafter to be noticed, are connected with the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood.

2. Prepositions also with *sive—sive*, are commonly in the Indicative; as "*Sive tacebis sive loqueris, mihi perinde est*;" Whether thou shalt be silent or shalt speak, is the same to me.

2. Present, past, and future *duty*, *ability*, *will*, or *liberty*, are, in Latin, denoted by the present, past, and future *Indicative* of that Verb which expresses these circumstances, and the Verb following is nearly always in the Infinitive *Present*, and not, as in English, in the Infinitive Perfect; as

Scribere debes;

| You ought to write; or, it is
your duty to write.

Scribere debuisti;

| You ought to have written;
that is, it was your duty to
write.

Scribere debebis;

| You should write; or, it will
be your duty to write.

1. To this Rule belong such words as *oportere*, *neceesse esse*, *debere*, *convenire*, *posse*; *par*, *aequum*, *consentaneum*, *iustum esse*; *melius*, *utilius*, *optabilius esse*; in which cases the *propriety*, *advantage*, *ability*, &c. are considered, in Latin, as something actual, and rendered accordingly in the Indicative, though the circumstances which would have realized it never took place; thus "*Hoc facere debebas*;" Thou oughtest to have done this. "*Longè utilius fuit angustias aditus occupare*;" It would have been much better to seize the pass.

2. In Latin also, an Indicative is frequently used when in English a Potential would be employed; thus "*Longum est, infinitum est narrare*," is said instead of *seem* or *foret*; It would be long or tedious to narrate.

3. When the obligation, ability, &c. are represented as *contingent*, the Subjunctive must be used.

a. With the Participles in *rus* and *dus*, the Indicative of *sum* in past time is more generally used than the Subjunctive; as "*Hæc via tibi ingredienda erat;*" This path *should have been* taken by thee.

Imperative Mood.

1. The Imperative Mood is used to express a *command, exhortation, entreaty, or wish*.

2. The Imperative has two forms; as *lege, legito*; the shorter form (*lege*) expresses either a *command, exhortation, or wish*; the longer form (*legito*) is used only for *command*, and chiefly in the wording of laws.

The hortative form, not having a First and a Third Person Singular or Plural, borrows the Subjunctive Present; as "*Legat,*" let him read; "*legamus,*" let us read, &c.

3. Instead of the Imperative, the Present or Perfect Subjunctive may be used to express a command more mildly; as

Facias hoc; feceris hoc; | Do this.

4. With the Imperative, and with the Subjunctive put imperatively, *not* must be expressed by *ne*, and *nor* by *neve*; as

Ne legito neve scribito; | Neither read nor write.

1. The Present and Perfect Subjunctive with *ne*, may be used to express a prohibition more mildly; as "*Hoc ne facias.*"

2. After *cave, fac*, and some other Imperatives, *ne* or *ut* is frequently omitted before the Subjunctive; as "*Cave dicas,*" (*cave ne dicas*) Beware of speaking.

Potential and Subjunctive Moods.

1. The *Potential Mood* is used when a thing is spoken of as *possible, uncertain, or contingent*, and is expressed in English by the signs *may, can, might, could, would, should*. This Mood is not governed by any contingent particle, but the sense itself requires this form; as

<i>Sit innocens;</i>	He may be innocent.
<i>Homines missi sunt, qui</i>	Men were sent who <i>should in-</i>
<i>eum certiozem facerent;</i>	<i>form</i> him; or, <i>to inform</i>
	<i>him.</i>

2. The *Subjunctive Mood* has the same terminations as the Potential, but it depends on certain Adverbs, Conjunctions, or indefinite terms to which it is *subjoined*, and which assert or imply a *contingency, circumstance, cause, motive, or something desirable or to be conceded*.

a. The following Conjunctions, having the annexed signification, govern the Subjunctive Mood:—

Ac si, just as if.

An, ne, num, { expressing
doubt.

Ceu, as if.

Dum, } provided,

Dummodo, } so that.

Etiamsi, although.

Forsan, } perhaps.

Forsitan, }

Licet, although.

Modò, provided.

Ne, lest.

Perinde ac si, as if.

Quamvis, { although, however
much.

Quasi, as if.

Quin, but that.

Quippe qui, as he.

Quò, that.

Quoad, until.

Quominus, in order that not.

Si, although.

Tanquam, as if.

Ut, that although.

Utinam, I wish.

Utpote cum, seeing that.

1. After *metuo*, *timeo*, *vereor*, the word *ne* is used, when the following Verb expresses a result contrary to our wish, but *ut* when it is agreeable to it; as "*Metuo ne frustra laborem susceperis*;" I fear *that* you have undertaken this labour in vain. "*Vereor ut maturè veniat*;" I fear that he may *not* come in time. *Ne*, therefore, after these Verbs, must be rendered by *that*, and *ut* by *that not*.

2. *Ne non*, with Verbs of *fearing*, are equivalent to *ut*, the negatives cancelling each other; as *Timeo ne non impetrem*; the same as *ut impetrem*. The negative may be incorporated with the Verb; as *Unum vereor, ne senatus Pompeium nolit dimittere*; that is, *vereor ut velit*.

3. *Neve* or *neu* is compounded of *ne* and *ve*, and means *or that not, and that not*; it must not therefore be confounded with *neque*; *neque* answers to *non*, *neve* to *ne*.

3. The following words have a Subjunctive Mood when the sense is contingent, but an Indicative when it is positive:—

Antequam, before.

Donec, } until.

Dum, }

Priusquam, before.

Quoad, as long as,—as far as.

Simul,

Simul ac,

Simul atque,

Simul ut,

Ubi, when.

} as soon as.

Antequam and *priusquam* have commonly, in a narrative, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; but in the other Tenses, they have either the Indicative or Subjunctive according to the sense.

4. The following before the Imperfect and Pluperfect govern the Subjunctive; before the other Tenses either the Indicative or Subjunctive according to the positive or contingent sense of the sentence:—

Etsi, although.

Ni, nisi, unless.

Si, Siquidem, if.

Sin, but if.

Tametsi, although.

1. The Imperfect or Pluperfect should be used when the thing spoken of is represented not as real, but only as supposed.

2. In a Conditional sentence, the clause containing the *condition* is sometimes called the *protasis*; and that which contains the *consequence*, the *apodosis*. In whatever tense of the Subjunctive the *protasis* may be, the *apodosis* must be the same.

5. *Cùm* or *quum*, signifying *since, although, whilst, during the time that, after*, requires the Subjunctive Mood.

a. *Cùm* or *quum*, signifying *when*, has a Subjunctive in the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect* Tenses, if the events described depend on each other, so that in English the Participle may be used; as

Alexander, <i>quum</i> interemisset Clitum, vix manus a se abstinuit;	Alexander having killed Clitus scarcely kept his hands from himself.
---	--

But when the time at which the events happened is intended to be distinctly marked, the Indicative must be employed: as Verres *quum* rosam viderat, tunc incipere ver arbitrabatur.

b. *Cùm* or *quum* has an Indicative Mood, when it signifies *because, (quòd); as often as, whenever, (quoties, quando quidem); when, at which time, (quando.)*

Also, To express the point of time *at which* an action or state commenced, and which is conceived to be continued to the present period; as "Jam anni propè quadraginta sunt, *quum* hoc probatur;" It is now nearly forty years *when* this was proved.

Again, When it signifies *as soon as*, and denotes an action or event in *close* succession to another; as "*Cum* ad nos allatum est de temeritate eorum, graviter commotus sum;" *As soon as* we were informed, &c.

6. The following Conjunctions and Adverbs, not implying contingency, are followed by an Indicative Mood:—

<i>An, ne, num</i> , interrogatives. <i>Ceu</i> , as. <i>Donec</i> , as long as. <i>Dum</i> , whilst, as long as. <i>Perinde</i> , as. <i>Postquàm</i> , <i>Posteaquàm</i> , } after. <i>Quasi</i> , as. <i>Quamdiu</i> , as long as.	<i>Quòd</i> , as to, how. <i>Quando</i> , when, since. <i>Quandoquidem</i> , <i>Quoniam</i> , } since. <i>Quancquàm</i> , although. <i>Quin</i> , why not. <i>Quippe</i> , for. <i>Tanquam</i> , as. <i>Ut</i> , as, how, since, when.
---	--

An and *num* are placed at the head of a sentence; *ne* is placed after the first word.

Government of *Qui, quæ, quod*.

7. When a writer or speaker uses the relative *qui, quæ, quod*, or the Causal Conjunctions *quòd, quia, quoniam, quandoquidem, quum, quando*, to report the words or sentiments of another, and not his own, the Verb must be in the Subjunctive Mood; as

Socrâtes dicere solebat, omnes in eo, <i>quod scirent</i> , satis esse eloquentes. Cic.;	Socrates was accustomed to say, that all men were sufficiently eloquent on that subject which they understood.
--	--

Here Cicero is quoting the words of another, and not expressing any sentiment of his own, and therefore the Verb *scirent* is in the Subjunctive.

Again, "Socrates accusatus est, *quod corrumpêret* juventutem." Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth.—Had the Verb *corrumpêret* been in the Indicative instead of the Subjunctive, the writer would have asserted that he *did actually* corrupt the youth, whereas he was only *accused* of doing so.

This is called the *Obliqua Oratio*.

a. When the Relative or Causal Clause is either the observation of the author, or the precise words of the person of whom he is speaking, the Relative or Causal Conjunction is joined to the *Indicative Mood*, unless the sense be contingent, or the Subjunctive be required by any of the subsequent Rules.

1. When the proposition is in the Indicative, it is called the *Recta Oratio*.

The following sentence illustrates both Rules: "*Præterea traditum esse memoratumque, in ultimâ quâdam terrâ, quæ Albania dicitur, gigni homines, qui in pueritiâ canescant.*" In the former Relative Clause, (being the observation of the writer,) *quæ* is joined to the Indicative, in the latter, the Relative Clause is the subject of *traditum*, and therefore takes the Subjunctive Mood.

2. In the same manner, *Ubi* not taken interrogatively, but relatively, and used for *in quo loco*; also *Quo* for *ad quem locum*, and *Unde* for *e quo loco*, taken relatively, and not expressing an observation or opinion of the author's, govern the Subjunctive Mood; thus, "*Romanos neque ullam facultatem habere navium, neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, perspiciebat.*"

3. When an *indirect* question is expressed, the Subjunctive is used; as "*Qualis sit ipse nescit.*"—"Incertum est quo te loco mors *expectet.*"

The *direct* questions are *Qualis est?* *Quo loco mors te expectat?*

8. *Qui* is joined to the Subjunctive Mood, when the Relative Clause expresses the *motive, reason, or cause* of the action or event; as

Malè fecit Hannibal, <i>qui</i> Capuæ <i>hiemârit</i> ;	Hannibal did wrong in wintering, or because he wintered at Capua.
---	---

1. If we say, "*Malè fecit, qui hiemavit,*" we impute error to the person who wintered, but do not express the error as consisting in his wintering; but when we say, "*Malè fecit, qui hiemârit,*" we signify, that he erred, *because he wintered*, or *in wintering*. In such expressions, the Relative seems equivalent to *Quoniam ego*, or *quod ego*; *Quoniam tu*, or *quod tu*; *Quoniam ille*, or *quod ille*.

2. When *ut*, *utpote*, *quippe*, are expressed with the Relative, they sufficiently mark the influence of the Relative Clause, and thus they are sometimes joined to the Indicative, but more frequently to the Subjunctive Mood.

9. *Qui* is joined to the Subjunctive Mood, when it is equivalent to *quanquam is*, or *etsi is*, *si is*, *modo is*, or *dummodo is*; as

Cicero, <i>qui</i> per omnes superiores dies milites in castra <i>continuisset</i> , misit;	Cicero, <i>though</i> he <i>had kept</i> his troops in the camp through all the preceding days, sent.
---	---

Quod is used with a Subjunctive to express a restriction; as "*Quod sciam*," as far as I know.

10. When the Relative follows an Interrogative, Negative, or Indefinite word, and expresses the same thing and subject as the antecedent clause, it is followed by the Subjunctive Mood; as

Quid est, quod metuas?

What reason have you for fearing? or You have no cause for fear.

1. This Rule is applicable only when the interrogation is equivalent to an affirmation or negation. When the sentence implies a question put for the sake of information, the Relative takes the Indicative Mood. "*Quid est, quod audio?*" signifies, What is that which I hear? "*Quid est, quod audiam?*" means, What is there for me to hear? or What reason is there for my hearing?

2. The following are the most common forms of expression comprehended under this Rule: *Quis est? Quantus est? Equis est? An quisquam est? &c. Nemo est, Nullus est, Nihil est, Non quisquam est, Nego esse quemquam, Vix ullus est, &c.*

11. The Relative is generally joined to the Subjunctive Mood, when a periphrasis is employed with the Verbs *sum*, *reperio*, *invenio*, *existo*, *exorior*, instead of simply the Nominative with the principal Verb; as

Sunt, qui dicant; There are persons who say; instead of *Nonnulli dicunt;* Some say.

1. This Rule is applicable only when the Relative Clause forms the Predicate of the sentence, as will be seen in the following examples:—

When Cicero says, "*Erant in magnâ potentiâ, qui consulebantur*," he means, Those who were consulted, were in great power. Here the Relative Clause forms the Subject, and the other the Predicate. Had he said, "*Erant in magnâ potentiâ, qui consulerentur*," he would have expressed, There were men in great power, who were consulted. Here *men in great power* is the Subject; and *were consulted* the Predicate. The Verb is therefore in the Subjunctive.

2. The same Periphrastic form of expression is also employed with the following phrases: *tempus fuit, tempus veniet, adest; si quis est, præsto sum, &c.*

12. When the Relative follows the intensive words, *sic, ita, tam, talis, is, (such, so,)* and is used for *ut ego, ut tu, ut ille, ut nos, ut vos, ut illi*, through all their Cases, it requires the Subjunctive Mood; as "*Non sum is qui dicam*;" I am not such a man, as to say; or I am not the man who says.

This Rule does not apply to the word *is* when it is not causal, but merely demonstrative; for it would then mean, I am not that man who says, "*Non sum is qui dico*."

1. The Relative agrees in person with the principal Subject, and not with the Antecedent, whose character is expressed in the Relative Clause; thus "*Non is sum, qui omnia sciam*." Here *qui* and *sciam* agree with *ego*, understood, and not with *is*.

2. *Qui sum*, used for *sum talis sum ut*, takes a Relative with the Subjunctive; as "*Quis sum, cujus aures lædi nefas sit?*" Who am I, that it should be a crime that my ears should be wounded?

13. *Qui* is joined to the Subjunctive Mood after *solus* and *unus*, when they are employed to restrict to a single person

the qualities implied in the Relative Clause; as "*Est solus ex familiâ qui discat;*" He is the only one of the family who learns. Were we to say *discit*, it might be mistaken for, He who learns is the only one of the family.

14. A Relative after *aptus*, *dignus*, *indignus*, and *idoneus*, requires the Subjunctive; as

Voluptas non est <i>digna</i> ad <i>quam</i> sapiens <i>respiciat</i> ;	Pleasure is not deserving that a wise man should regard her.
--	--

15. When *qui* is used for the interrogative indefinite *quis*, and not as a mere relative, it is followed by the Subjunctive; as

Dic mihi <i>quem</i> videas;	Tell me whom you see.
------------------------------	-----------------------

16. Comparatives with *quàm* *qui* in all its Cases require the Subjunctive; as

Major sum <i>quàm</i> cui possit fortuna nocere;	I am too great for fortune to be able to injure me.
---	--

17. When a Subjunctive is used, the Verb in a clause dependent on that Subjunctive, must be in the same Mood; as

Rex imperavit, ut quae bello opus essent <i>pararentur</i> ;	The king commanded, that those things should be pre- pared which were necessary for the war.
---	---

Pararentur is in the Subjunctive, because it follows *ut*, and *essent* is in the Subjunctive because *pararentur* is.

18. When a proposition is in the Infinitive Mood, a clause belonging to it, as an *essential* part, must be in the Subjunctive after the Relative; as "*Perspicuum est, esse aliquod numen quo hic mundus regatur.*" It is clear that there is some divinity, by whom this world is governed.

The Infinitive Mood.

1. When two Verbs come together, the latter must be in the Infinitive Mood, when it denotes the subject or object of the former; as

Cupio <i>scire</i> ;	I wish to know.
----------------------	-----------------

1. The Infinitive is used chiefly after *volo*, *nolo*, *cupio*, *amo*, *conor*, *tento*, *audeo*, *studeo*, *cogito*, *possum*, *nequeo*, *obliviscor*, *debet*, *coepi*, *incipio*, *constituo*, *soleo*, *consuevi*, &c.

When the latter Verb does not express the certain and immediate effect, but the cause, purpose, end, or something remote, the *Subjunctive* Mood is generally used.

2. The Infinitive Perfect is used as the Infinitive Present, after *contentus sum*, *satis est*, *satis habeo*; as *Satis sit discere*.

3. The Infinitive frequently follows Adjectives, and sometimes Substantives; as *Dignus amari*; *Tempus equum fumantia solvere* colla.

2. The Infinitive is used as a Neuter Noun in all the Cases of the Singular Number, and may have Adjectives and Pronouns agreeing with it; as

<i>Fraudāre</i> turpe est;	To cheat is shameful.
<i>Praeter plorāre</i> ;	Except lamentation.
<i>Dignus amāri</i> ;	Worthy of love.

3. When the word *that* between two Verbs is omitted in Latin, the Noun or Pronoun following is put in the Accusative, and the Verb in the Infinitive Mood; as

Audio, <i>patrem esse doctum</i> ;	I hear that your father is learned.
------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

1. The word *that* is frequently omitted in English; thus, "I think the master will come," for "I think *that* the master will come."

2. The Infinitive, according to this Rule, must be used either with the Accusative of the *subject* or of the *object*. The Accusative of the *object* is generally a whole proposition; as "*Scio Ciceronem fuisse eloquentem*;" I know *that* Cicero was eloquent.

3. When the Verb has no Supine and no Participle Future Active, an Infinitive Future is formed by *fore* or *futurum esse*, and *futurum fuisse*, followed by *ut* with a Subjunctive; as "*Spero fore ut contingat id nobis*;" I hope this may fall to our lot.

Such Verbs as *existimo*, *puto*, *spero*, *suspicio*, are frequently followed by *fore* or *futurum esse*, even when the Verb is not defective; as "*Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te supplex venirem*."

4. When two Accusatives with an Infinitive would render it doubtful which was the Case of the Infinitive, Actives should be changed into Passives, or *quòd* or *ut* should, if possible, be used, thus in the sentence "*Patrem te amare dicunt*," it is doubtful whether you love the father, or the father you; we should therefore say, "*Patrem a te amari*, or a *pater te amari*."

a. After Verbs denoting *pain* or *joy*, *surprise* or *wonder*, the word *that* may be expressed by *quòd* with the Indicative or Subjunctive, instead of the Accusative with the Infinitive; as "*Doleo te stomachari*, or *quòd stomacharis*," I grieve that thou art offended.

1. With *doleo* and *gaudeo* the Accusative and Infinitive are more common; but *gratias agere* and *gratulari* have generally *quòd*.

2. *That*, signifying *in as much as*, *as far as concerns*, must be rendered by *quòd*, when a Pronoun precedes to which it refers; as "*Illud est admiratione dignum, quòd Regulus captivos retinendos censuit*."

4. The Infinitive is frequently used in narration instead of the Indicative; as

Postquam in aedes irrupērunt, diversi regem <i>quaerere</i> ;	Afterwards they rushed into the palace, and in different directions (began) to seek the king.
---	---

This is called *Infinitivus Historicus*. An ellipsis of *coepit* or *coeperunt* has been supposed, but the sense will not always admit this; as in this sentence, "*Ingenium ejus haud absurdum; posse versus facere, jocum movere*."

a. In interrogations or exclamations expressing *indignation*, the Accusative with the Infinitive is used alone, *ne* being commonly added; as

Mene incepto <i>desistere</i> vic- tam?	Shall I, as if conquered, desist from my undertaking?
--	--

The Verbs *dicis, putas, dicunt, putant* are understood in such cases.

5. Verbs of endeavouring, aiming, and accomplishing, as *facio, studeo, (id, hoc, illud,) ago, meditor, &c.*; of begging, demanding, admonishing, and commanding, except *jubeo*, require the Subjunctive with *ut* instead of the Infinitive; as

Omne animal id agit, <i>ut</i> se <i>conseruet</i> ;	Every animal takes pains to preserve itself.
---	---

Moneo and *admoneo*, signifying to apprise, remind, inform, take an Infinitive; signifying to admonish or exhort to an action, have *ut* or *ne* with the Subjunctive; as *Moneo ut quiescant*. *Persuadeo*, to convince, has an Infinitive, to succeed in exhorting, the Subjunctive. *Nuncio, scribo, and dico*, implying an injunction or intention that a thing should be done, have a Subjunctive.

a. *Ut* must also be used with a Subjunctive after *accidit, caput est, contingit, evenit, extremum est, fieri non potest, fit, futurum est, incidit, occurrit, rarum est, relinquitur, reliquum est, restat, sequitur, superest, usu venit*; as

Reliquum est <i>ut</i> egomet mihi <i>consulam</i> ;	It remains that I provide for myself.
---	--

It must be here observed that *ut* always denotes a *purpose, consequence, or result*; *quod* is either *explanatory* or denotes a *cause*.

6. After Verbs of *being willing, being unwilling, and permitting*, (which commonly take the Accusative with the Infinitive,) and also after Verbs of *advising, asking, reminding*, the Subjunctive alone without *ut*, is frequently used, particularly after *fac, velim, nolim, malim, oportet, necesse est*; as

<i>Fac</i> spem bonam <i>habeas</i> ;	Take care that thou have good hope.
Tu <i>velim</i> nos absentes <i>diligas</i> ;	I wish thou wouldst love us absent.

THE USE OF THE TENSES.

The Indicative Mood.

Every action may be considered either as *past, present, or future*, and also as in an *imperfect* or a *perfect* state.

The Indicative Mood has three Tenses both for the Imper-

fect and Perfect states; the former implying the *continuation*, and the latter the *completion* of an action; as

IMPERFECT STATE.
Pres. *Doceo*, I teach.

Imp. *Docebam*, I was teaching.
Fut. Imp. *Docēbo*, I shall teach.

PERFECT STATE.
(Pres.) Perf. *Docui*, I taught or have taught.
Past Perf. *Docueram*, I had taught.
Fut. Perf. *Docuero*, I shall have taught.

1. The *Present Tense* speaks of an action or event which takes place in present time; as *Doceo*, I teach, am teaching, or do teach.

1. The Latin Present is used to express general and immutable truths, and also customs still continuing.

2. It is very frequently used in narrations of past events, to render the representation more lively.

3. Sometimes it has the force of the Perfect, when joined with an Adverb or other expression of past time that includes the past and present; as "*Jam pridem cupio Alexandriam visere*;" I have long had a desire to visit Alexandria.

2. The *Imperfect Tense* represents an action or event which was going on and not completed at some past time; as *Docebam*, I was teaching.

1. This Tense is generally used to express actions frequently repeated, also manners, customs, and institutions formerly existing; as "*Ansæres Romæ publicè alebantur in Capitolio*;" Geese were kept at the public expense at Rome in the Capitol.

2. In writing letters, the Romans used the Imperfect Tense, when speaking of a thing which was present at the time of writing, but which was subject to an alteration, and might be already past when their letter reached its destination; as "*Novi nihil erat apud nos*;" There is no news with us.

But if the discourse was about something unchangeable, or at least about things which would not probably be changed within the time that the letter would come to hand, the Present was used; as "*Deus est justus*."

3. The *Perfect* is sometimes used of a continued action, when its continuance is not the circumstance which is meant to be brought particularly to view; but the *Imperfect* is never employed, except the action is repeated or continued.

3. The *Perfect Tense* represents an action or event either as just finished, or as finished some time ago; as *Docui*, I have taught, or I taught.

In the latter sense, it is used to relate events simply as happening in past time, without reference to their having been completed or not completed at any specified time. It is in this sense sometimes called an Aorist, and is expressed in English by the *Past Tense*; as *Docui*, I taught, or did teach.

4. The *Pluperfect* (Past Perfect) expresses an action or event which was past before some other past action or event specified in the sentence, and to which it refers; as *Docueram*, I had taught.

5. The *Future Imperfect* represents an action or event which is yet to come; as *Docēbo*, I shall or will teach.

When a future action is spoken of, and another connected with it has not yet taken place, the latter is also put in the Future; or in the Future Perfect, if it must

be completed before the other can begin; as "*Faciam si potero*;" I will do it if I can. "*Ut sementem feceris ita metes*;" As thou hast sown so wilt thou reap.

The same Rule applies to the Imperative and to the Subjunctive used imperatively; as "*Facito hoc ubi voles*;" Do this when you please.

6. The *Future Perfect* denotes that a future action or event will be completed at, or before another future action or event; as *Docuero*, I shall have taught.

The *Future Perfect* is sometimes used for the *Future*, to express haste; as *Mox videro*.

The Potential and Subjunctive Moods.

The *Potential* and *Subjunctive* Moods have the *Present* and *Past* for both states, but no *Future* Tense.

1. As there is no *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, its place is supplied by the other Tenses of the *Subjunctive*; as "*Illā de re promisit se scripturum, quum primum nuncium acciperet*;" He promised that he would write concerning that matter as soon as he should have received intelligence.

2. Sometimes the other *Subjunctives* cannot supply its place; in this case, therefore, the *Periphrastic Future* must be employed; thus, for "I do not doubt that he will return," we should say, "*Non dubito quin rediturus sit*." Were we to say, "*Non dubito quin redeat*," the expression would imply, "I do not doubt that he is returning." "*Quin redierit*" would mean "That he has returned."

3. The *Participle in dus* must not be used for the *Future*, but *futurum sit*, or *esset* with *ut*; or in the *Infinitive, fore*, which is of both Tenses, must be employed; as "*Spero fore ut vincatur*;" I hope that he will be conquered.

7. The *Present Subjunctive* has sometimes a *Present*, but generally a *Future* signification.

8. The *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect* Tenses *Subjunctive* are variously rendered, according to their connexion with the other parts of the sentence.

9. The *Perfect Subjunctive* is used only of a completed action, and of the present time; as "*Puer de tecto decidit, ut crus frangeret*;" The boy has fallen from the roof, so that he has broken his leg.

10. The *Present* and *Perfect Subjunctive* describe a supposed or probable action or event, without necessarily implying that it does not actually exist, or may not exist; but the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect* exclude the idea of its actual existence; as "*Si velit*," if he wishes; that is, he may or may not wish; "*Si vellet*," if he wished or did wish; implying that "he does not or did not wish."

1. Sometimes, however, the *Present* and *Perfect Subjunctive* are used even of what is meant to be represented as not actually existing, to express in a more lively way, that if it did exist, certain consequences would follow; as "*Tu si hic sis aliter sentias*."

2. The *Particle of contingency* is sometimes understood in the *Present* and *Perfect Subjunctive*; as "*Dixerit Epicurus*;" Grant that Epicurus could have said.

a. The *Present* and *Perfect Subjunctive* are used, in a

future sense, to *soften an assertion or statement*; as "*Nemo istud tibi concedat (concesserit);*" No one will grant you that.

b. The *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive are used with questions which imply a *doubt* respecting the probability or propriety of an action; as "*Quis posthac numen Junōnis adoret?*" Who will henceforth adore the divinity of Juno?

The *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive are sometimes used instead of an Imperative. See Imper. p. 132.

11. The *Periphrastic* Conjugation denotes that a person has *a mind to do*, or is *upon the point of doing* something; as "*Scripturus sum;*" I am about to write, or meditate writing.

THE CONNEXION OF THE TENSES.

After the words *ut, ne, quò, quo minùs, quin, qui, quae, quod, quis*, and other Particles, that govern the Subjunctive, it must be observed that,

1. The *Present* Subjunctive is used when the preceding Independent Verb expresses a *present* or *future* action; and

2. The *Imperfect* Subjunctive, when the preceding Verb expresses an *imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect* action. Regard, however, must be paid to the proper meaning of the Tenses, as well as to the sense of the subject.

1. The *Present* is followed by the *Present* when it relates to a present circumstance; as "*Rogo te, ut venias;*" I ask thee to come. "*Pugnat, quasi pro vitâ contendat;*" He fights, as if he contended for life.

a. Yet the *Present* is followed by the *Perfect*, when the discourse is of a *past* subject, and by the *Future*, when it is about a *future* subject; as "*Timeo ne libros meos amiserim;*" I fear that I have lost my books. "*Dic mihi, quando rediturus sis;*" Tell me when you will return.

b. Sometimes by the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, when the sense requires; as "*Dic mihi, quid faceres;*" "*Dic mihi quid fecisses.*"

2. The *Future* is followed by the *Present*; as "*Rogabo patrem, ut librum mihi emat;*" I will ask my father to buy me a book.

a. The *Future* is followed by the *Perfect* when the discourse is of a *past* event; as "*Cras necesse erit, ut labor finitus sit;*" To-morrow it will be necessary that the labour have been finished.

3. The *Imperfect* is followed by the *Imperfect*; as "*Rogabat me, ut venirem;*" He asked me to come.

a. By the *Pluperfect* when the sense requires it; as "*Vellem, nunquam te visissem;*" I could wish that I had never seen thee.

4. The *Perfect* is followed by the *Imperfect* when it is used simply to express past time; as "*Puer de tecto decidit, ut cras frangeret;*" The boy fell from the roof, so that he broke his leg. "*Pugnavit, quasi pro vitâ contenderet;*" He fought, as if he had contended for life.

5. The *Pluperfect* is followed by the *Imperfect*; as "*Timebam ne in morbum inciderem;*" I had feared that I should fall sick.

a. Yet the *Pluperfect* is followed by the *Pluperfect* when the sense requires it; as "*Audiveram, qualis fuisset;*" I had heard what sort of a man he had been.

6. Verbs similarly situated with respect to time and circumstance, must be in the same Mood and Tense, connected by Copulative and Disjunctive Conjunctions. Sometimes the Conjunctions are understood.

7. To express *different* modifications of time, corresponding Tenses must be used; as The *Present* with the *Perfect*; as "*Amavisti me et adhuc amas.*"

The *Imperfect* with the *Pluperfect*; as "*Speraveram semper et tam sperabam.*"

The *Present* with the *Future*; as "*Amo te et per omnem vitam amabo.*"

8. The Infinitive Present is used both of the *past* and the *present*, according to the Verb on which it depends; as "*Credebam te legere;*" "*Credo te legere.*"

9. The *Perfect Infinitive* will be followed by the *Perfect*; as "*Arbitramur nos ea praestitisse, quae ratio praescripserit;*" We think that we have performed those things which reason required.

The Infinitive of the perfect-aorist will be followed by a Tense of past time; as "*Gaudeo me curavisse ante senectutem ut benè viverem;*" I am glad that I took care before old-age to live well.

The Present Participle also is followed by a Verb of past or present time, according to the Tense of the Verb on which it depends.

THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS IN A LATIN SENTENCE.

In the Arrangement of Words in Latin, the following Rules are observed:—

1. The most important word in the sentence must be placed before those connected words which are less important.

NOTE 1. In English, the *Subject* is placed first, next the *Verb* with its *Adverb*, and then the *Object* with the words connected with it. The reverse of this frequently takes place in Latin, particularly in subjects addressed to the feelings or the imagination. The most important words are, in such instances, placed so as to make the strongest impression; those which express the principal object of the discourse, together with its circumstances, being placed the first in the sentence, and those which represent the actor or agent frequently the last; as in the following sentences:—

The Nominative, when emphatic, precedes the Verb, when not emphatic, it follows; as "*Ortus nostri partem patria vindicat.*" "*Non intelligunt homines, quàm magnum vectigal sit parsimonia.*" Oblique cases, when emphatic, precede the governing word; as "*Necessitatis inventa antiquiora sunt quàm voluptatis.*" When not emphatic, they follow; as "*An tam eram rudis? tam ignarus rerum, tam expens consilii?*"

2. In Latin narrative, in didactic composition, or in ordinary discourse, in which no emphasis is intended, after Conjunctions is placed the *Subject*, then the *Oblique Cases*, with all other unemphatic additions, and, lastly, the *Verb*.

NOTE 1. When a descriptive clause is subjoined to the Nominative that cannot conveniently stand between the Nominative and the Verb, or when the Nominative is closely connected with the succeeding clause by which it is either limited or explained, it must follow the Verb; as "*Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent.*"

2. Circumstances, that is, the *cause*, *manner*, *instrument*, *time*, or *place*, must be expressed before the predicate or thing affirmed; as "*Eum ferro occidi.*"

3. An aggregate of particulars, to which any addition is to be expressed, or from which any exception is to be made, generally precedes the addition or the exception; as "*Ego, praeter caeteras tuas virtutes, humanitatem tuam admiror.*"

Also, what is common to several objects, either precedes or follows them, but must not be placed with one exclusively; as "*In scriptoribus legendis et imitandis,*" or "*In legendis imitandisque scriptoribus,*" and not "*In legendis scriptoribus et imitandis.*"

4. The Verb is seldom placed at the end of the proposition, when either this is too long for the hearer to be kept in expectation of it, or when too many Verbs would come together at the end.

5. Sometimes the most important word is placed at the end of the sentence, in order that the reader's attention may dwell upon it.

3. Words connected in sense should be as close as possible to each other; and the words of one clause should never be mixed with those of another.

When, for instance, Horace says, "*Terrarum dominos evexit ad deos*," it is impossible to ascertain whether "*Terrarum dominos*" refer to the Romans or to the gods.

4. The word governed is placed before the word which governs it; as "*Carthaginiensium dux*; *Laudis avidus*; *Hostem fudit*."

Much, however, depends whether the governed or governing word is the more important.

1. The *proper* name must precede the name of the rank or profession, &c. or a word put in apposition; as "*Cicero orator*; *Agis rex*; *Cyprus insula*." Except the emphasis falls upon the common Noun; as "*Pontifex* Scaevola," to distinguish him from the Augur.

2. The Vocative either introduces the sentence, or is placed amongst the first words; as "*Credo, vos, iudices*."

3. When the *Adjective* is emphatic, it precedes the Substantive; but when the *Substantive* is emphatic, the Adjective follows. In other cases, the position of the Adjective is various, sometimes before and sometimes after the Substantive.

a. The adjectives *primus, medius, ultimus, extremus, summus, infimus, imus, supremus, reliquus, caeterus*, are generally placed before the Substantive.

b. When the Substantive governs another in the Genitive, the Adjective generally precedes both; as "*Duo Platonis praecepta*."

c. When the Substantive is governed by a Preposition, the Adjective is frequently put before the Substantive; as "*Magna ex parte*."

d. If two Adjectives refer to the same Noun, the Pronoun is often inserted between them; as "*Libero tuo et admirabili ingenio delector*."

5. Some words have a fixed and determinate situation in the sentence.

1. The Pronouns *hic, is, ille, iste*, generally precede their Substantives, and if used substantively, are placed before the Participle; as "*Hoc tempore*;" "*Eo regnante*."

2. The Relative generally follows the Antecedent, and should be placed as near to it as possible.

a. The Relative is generally the first word in its own clause. When it connects a sentence with a preceding sentence, and is equivalent to *et ille, et hic, et is*, or to the Pronouns without the Conjunction, it must be the first word; as "*Laudo eum, qui deum colit*;" "*Factum hoc est. Quod quis negat?*"

3. *Adverbs* are generally placed immediately before the words which they qualify; as "*Nihil tam asperum*."

a. *Nom*, qualifying a single word, is placed immediately before it; as "*Nom te reprehendo*;" but when qualifying a whole proposition, and not a single word, it must stand before the Verb; and before the *finite Verb*, if an Infinitive depends upon it.

4. *Prepositions* are either placed immediately before their Case, or separated from it only by a Genitive Case, belonging to the word which they govern. See Note 3, b. c. above.

5. *Conjunctions* generally introduce the clause to which they belong; as "*At si dares hanc vim*."

a. But *que* and *ve* are added to the latter of the two words which they serve to connect; as "*Albus atque*. *Ne* is placed after the first word; as "*Loquarne*."

Autem, enim, verò, quoque, quidem, are generally placed after the second word in the clause, and sometimes after the third; as *Ille autem, Ego enim*.

Nam, namque, at, verum, sed, etenim, equidem, ergo, igitur, itaque, tamen, frequently stand the first, sometimes the second.

Ne quidem must always be separated; as "*Ne legere quidem didicit*." *Non nisi* are commonly separated.

6. Words of a similar kind, and those expressing a contrast, should be as close together as possible; as "*Manus manum lavat*;" "*Appetis pecuniam, virtutem abjicis*." "*Excludor ego, ille recipitur*."

a. The words which are opposed to each other, should, as much as possible, be of the same part of speech, thus a Noun should answer to a Noun, &c.

DIRECTIONS FOR TRANSLATING.

1st. Closely adhere to the actual order, and whatever words may be omitted, let them be taken as soon as possible.

2nd. Whatever words are taken together, let them stand in the actual order.

3rd. Take together, or in immediate succession, words which are in regimen or concord.

4th. Take together, or in immediate succession, the whole of a cluster of words.

5th. Let the sentences stand in the actual order, and take the dependent sentence in its proper place.

6th. With the preceding limitations, take as few words together as possible.

7th. Be as literal as possible.

Note.—The above Rules should be deviated from, only when to observe them would destroy perspicuity.

GRAMMATICAL FIGURES.

Grammatical Figures are certain deviations from the general analogy of the language, either in Etymology or Syntax.

1. FIGURES RELATING TO ORTHOGRAPHY AND ETYMOLOGY.

1. *Prosthesis* adds a letter or syllable to the beginning of a word; as *gnatus* for *natus*, *Mamercus* for *Marcus*. 2. *Epenthesis* inserts a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as *reliquiæ* for *reliquiæ*, *induperator* for *imperator*. 3. *Paragoge* adds to the end; as *mittier* for *mitti*. All these are merely older forms of spelling.

1. *Aphaerësis* takes away a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as *'st* for *est*, *ponère* for *deponère*. 2. *Syncope* rejects a letter or syllable from the middle of a word; as *periculum* for *periculum*, *dixti* for *dixisti*, *deum* for *deorum*. 3. *Apocope* cuts off a letter or syllable from the end; as *tun'* for *tune*, *satin'* for *satisne*.

Metathesis transposes a letter or syllable; as *accerso* for *arcesso*.

Antithesis puts one letter for another; as *faciundum* for *faciendum*.

Archaism is the use of antiquated words or modes of spelling; as *olli* for *illi*, *pictai* for *pictae*, *siem* for *sim*. It is chiefly used by poets.

II. FIGURES IN SYNTAX.

The Figures of Syntax consist of four kinds; *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, *Enallage*, and *Hyperbaton*.

1. *Ellipsis*.

1. **ELLIPSIS** is the omission of one or more words necessary to complete the regular Syntax; as *Ita aiunt*, supply *homines*. *Paucis te volo*, that is, *In paucis verbis ad te alloqui ego volo*.

Grammarians have generally included the following under this head; *Asyndeton*, *Zeugma*, *Syllepsis*, and *Prolepsis*.

1. *Asyndeton* is the omission of Conjunctions; as *Doctrinam, virtutem amo*; et being understood.

2. *Zeugma* is when an Adjective or a Verb, referring to different Substantives, agrees with the nearest; as *Et genus et virtus, nisi cum re, villor algâ est*. *Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candidus eses*.

3. *Syllepsis* is when an Adjective or a Verb, joined to different Substantives, agrees in Gender with the Masculine rather than with the Feminine, &c. or in Person with the First rather than with the Second, &c.; as "*Pater et mater mortui sunt*." "*Sustulimus manus et ego et Balbus*."

4. *Prolepsis* is when the parts are mentioned after the whole, though differing from it in Number or Person, without repeating the Verb or Adjective; as "*Exercitus hostium duo, alter ab urbe, alter a Galliâ, obstat*," for "*Exercitus hostium duo obstat, alter ab urbe obstat, alter a Galliâ obstat*."

2. *Pleonasm*.

2. **PLEONASM** is the use of more words than are necessary to complete the sense; as *Oculis vidi*, for *vidi*; *Sic ore locutus est*, for *sic locutus est*.

A real Pleonasm must be avoided, especially in prose. The word *sibi* in the following sentence is Pleonastic: "*Factus Scipio est Consul bis, primum ante tempus, iterum sibi suo tempore*."

But in many of the instances of it alleged from good authors, the words supposed to be redundant will be found to add something to the meaning or to the force of the sentence.

To the Pleonasm belong the following:

1. *Parecon* is the addition of an unnecessary Particle to a word; as "*Egomel, adesdum, videsis*."

2. *Polysyndeton* is the repetition of Conjunctions; as "*Unâ Eurasque Notusque ruunt, creberque procellis Africus*."

3. *Hendiadys* expresses one thing, as if it were two; as "*Pateris libamus et auro*," instead of "*pateris aureis libamus*."

4. *Periphrasis* uses many words to express one thing; as "*Teneri factus ovium*," that is, *agni*.

3. *Enallage*.

3. **ENALLAGE** is the change or substitution of one Gender, Number, Case, Mood, Tense, or Person for another; as *Quæ loca Numidia appellatur*; for *appellantur*. *Dare classibus nostros*; for *classes austris*.

It must be observed that Latin writers did not make use of this figure at pleasure. Some reason could generally, if not always, be assigned for substituting one Case, Mood, &c. for another.

To *Enallage* belong the following:

1. *Antimēria* is the use of one part of Speech for another; as "*Populum latē regem*;" for *regnantem*.

2. *Synchysis* is when the Adjective or the Verb agrees with its subject, not in Grammar but only in sense; as "*Pars in crucem acti sunt, pars bestis objecti*."

3. *Hellenism* is an imitation of Greek construction; as "*Abstinentō irarum*;" for *ab iris*. "*Sensit medios delapsus Achivos*;" that is, *se delapsus fuisse*.

4. *Archaism*, in Syntax, is when an old mode of construction is used, as when *utor*, *abutor*, and *fruor*, govern an *Accusative*; *Absente nobis*; for *absentibus nobis* or *me absente*.

4. *Hyperbāton*.

HYPERBĀTON is the violation of the common arrangement of words in a sentence.

It is divided into *Anastrophe*, *Hysterōn proteron*, *Synchysis*, *Tmesis*, and *Parenthesis*.

1. *Anastrophe* places that word last, which ought to precede; as "*His accensa super*;" for *super his accensa*.

2. *Hysterōn proteron* puts that first in the sentence which is last in the sense; as "*Moriāmur, et in media arma ruamus*."

3. *Synchysis* is a confused arrangement of words; as "*Saxa vocant Itali meditis quæ in fluctibus aras*;" for "*quæ saxa in meditis fluctibus Itali vocant aras*."

4. *Tmesis* separates a compound word by the insertion of another word; as "*per mihi gratum feceris*," that is, *pergratum*.

5. *Parenthesis* is the interruption of a sentence by the insertion of some word or words; as "*Titÿre, dum redēo (brevis est via,) pasce capellas*."

A *Barbarism* is the use of a word which is foreign to the language; as *stavi* for *steti*.

A *Solecism* is a construction contrary to the Rules of Syntax; as "*Acuta gladius*;" for *acutus gladius*: "*Faveo te*;" for *faveo tibi*.

IV.—PROSODY.

Prosody teaches the *Quantity* or proper pronunciation of syllables, and the laws of *verse*.

QUANTITY.

The *Quantity* of a syllable signifies the time occupied in pronouncing it.

Syllables are either long or short. A *long* syllable occupies twice the time in pronouncing it that a *short* one does. Long syllables are marked thus ¯; as *mēnsāē*; short syllables thus ˇ; as *păter*.

Every syllable must be either long or short; those which are sometimes the one and sometimes the other, are called *common*.

A syllable is said to be long or short, 1st by *nature* or *custom*, or 2nd by *authority*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular Rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*, that is, by the usage of the poets; thus *lē* in *lēgo* is short, because it is always made so by the poets.

The ancient poets sometimes made syllables long or short, contrary to the Rules of Prosody; that liberty is called *Poetical License*.

The last syllable but one in a word is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the last but two, the *Antepenultima*.

QUANTITY OF THE FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

1. One vowel before another in the same word is short; as *dēūs*; or before *h* and a vowel; as *trăho*, *mīhi*; because *h*, in verse, is considered merely as a breathing.

Exceptions. a. The *e* in the Genitive and Dative of the Fifth Declension, is long when preceded by *i*; as *dīēi*, *speciēi*; otherwise it is short.

b. *I* is long in *fīo* when not followed by *r*; as *fīebam*; but short when followed by *r*; as *fīerem*.

Genitives ending in *ius* have the *i* long in prose, but common in verse; but *alius* is always long, and *altērius* always short.

Proper names in *eius* and *aïus*, have the antepenult, and in the Vocative the penult, long; as *Pompēïus*, *Cāïus*, *Pompēi*, *Cāi*.

A, the penult in the old form of the Genitive of the First Declension, is long; as *aquāi*: and also the first syllable in *āēr*, *dïus*, *ēheu*, is long.

c. The first syllable in *Io*, *ohe*, and *Diāna* is common.

2. A Diphthong is long; as *āurum*, *musāe*.

a. But *præ*, in composition, is short before a vowel; as *præire*.

3. Contracted syllables are long; thus *mî* for *mihi*, *cōgo* for *cōdgo*, *alius* for *aliïus*, *sīs* for *si vis*.

4. A vowel is long by *position*, 1st before two consonants, either in the same word, as *bēllum*, or in two words, as *semper Deus*; 2nd. before the double consonants *X*, *Z*, and *J*; as *āxis*.

In the compounds of *jugum* the preceding vowel is short before *j*; as *bïfugus*, *quadrifugus*.

a. If the second consonant is either *l* or *r*, a vowel naturally short becomes *common* in verse; as *pātris* or *pātris*, from *pāter*; *tenēbræ* or *tenēbræ*. In prose, however, it is always *short*; as *pātris*, *tenēbræ*. If the vowel is naturally long, it continues so; as *ātra*, from *āter*.

When *l* or *r* comes *before* the other consonants, or when it belongs to a different syllable, the vowel is long; as *ārte*, *āb-luo*, *ōb-ruo*, *quamōb-rem*.

b. When the last syllable of a word ends with a short vowel, and the next word begins with two consonants, the preceding short vowel is sometimes, though rarely, made long; as "Date *telā*, scandite muros."

DERIVATIVE WORDS.

Derivative and compound words retain the quantity of their simples; as *lēgebam* from *lēgo*, *lēgeram* from *lēgi*, *amicus* from *āmo*, *invideo* from *video*, *perjūrus* from *jūris*.

The quantity of the simple word is not altered by the change of the vowel or diphthong in the compound; as *conciō* from *cādo*, *conciō* from *cādo*.

Exceptions. 1. Perfects and Supines of two syllables have the first syllable long, though the Present is short; as *vīdī*,

visum, from *video*. But these Perfects *bibi*, *dēdi*, *fidi*, (from *findo*) *sēti*, *stīti*, *scēdi*, *tūli*, (and when a vowel follows, as *rui*,) have the first syllable *short*; and also these Supines, *cūtum*, (from *cio*) *dātum*, *ītum*, *lūtum*, *rātum*, *rūtum*, *sātum*, *sītum*, and *stātum*, from *sto*.

All other Perfects and Supines retain, in the first syllable, the quantity of the Present; as *vōco*, *vōcavi*, *vōcatum*; except *pōsui*, *pōsitum*, from *pōno*; *gēnui*, *gēnitum*, from *gigno*; *vōlūtum* and *vōlūtum*, from *vōlvo* and *volveo*.

Supines of more than two syllables in *ātum*, *ētum*, and *ītum*, have the penult long. So also Supines in *ītum*, from Perfects in *īvi*, (except *eo* and its compounds); but all other Supines in *ītum* have the penult short; as *monui*, *monitum*. Participles in *rus* have the penult long; as *amatūrus*.

2. Perfects formed by reduplication, have the two first syllables short; as *tūtūdi* from *tundo*, *cēcīni* from *cano*; except *cecīdi* from *caedo*, and *pepēdi*, and those in which the middle syllable is made long by position; as *mōmōrdi* from *mordeo*.

1. The following words have a *long* vowel from a *short* one in the root:—

<i>ambitum</i> from <i>ambio</i> ,	<i>lex</i> , <i>lēgis</i> from <i>lēgo</i> ,	<i>sēdes</i> from <i>sēdeo</i> ,
<i>cōmo</i> — <i>cōma</i> ,	<i>littera</i> — <i>līno</i> , <i>lītum</i> ,	<i>sēcus</i> — <i>sēcus</i> ,
<i>hōmīnus</i> — <i>hōmo</i> ,	<i>mācro</i> — <i>mācer</i> ,	<i>stīpendium</i> — <i>stīps</i> , <i>stīpla</i> ,
<i>hūmor</i> — <i>hūmus</i> ,	<i>mōbilis</i> — <i>mōveo</i> ,	<i>suspicio</i> — <i>suspīcor</i> ,
<i>hībēnus</i> — <i>hībēns</i> ,	<i>mōles</i> — <i>mōla</i> ,	<i>tēgula</i> — <i>tēgo</i> ,
<i>nōnus</i> — <i>nōvem</i> ,	<i>pēnuria</i> — <i>pēnus</i> ,	<i>vōmer</i> — <i>vōmo</i> ,
<i>imbēcillus</i> — <i>bāculus</i> ,	<i>persōna</i> — <i>persōno</i> ,	<i>vox</i> , <i>vōcis</i> — <i>vōce</i> ,
<i>jūgūrum</i> — <i>jūgum</i> ,	<i>rex</i> , <i>rēgis</i> , } — <i>rēgo</i> ,	<i>dā</i> , (Imper.) is long, but
<i>jūnior</i> — <i>jūvenis</i> ,	<i>regina</i> , }	the other tenses are short.
<i>lātēna</i> — <i>lātēo</i> ,		

2. The following have a *short* vowel from a *long* one in the root:—

<i>agnītus</i> } from <i>nōtus</i> ,	<i>veridīcus</i> } from <i>dīco</i> ,	<i>pāciacor</i> , from <i>pax</i> , <i>pācis</i> ,
<i>cognītus</i> }	<i>dīcas</i> }	<i>innūda</i> } — <i>nūbo</i> ,
<i>nōta</i> }	<i>dīcītus</i> — <i>dīssero</i> ,	<i>prōmīda</i> }
<i>āreāna</i> } — <i>āreo</i> ,	<i>dux</i> , <i>dūcis</i> — <i>dūco</i> ,	<i>pūgil</i> — <i>pugnus</i> ,
<i>ārista</i> }	<i>fārtina</i> — <i>fār</i> ,	<i>quāstīlus</i> — <i>quāstus</i> ,
<i>ārundo</i> }	<i>fīdes</i> } — <i>fīdo</i> ,	<i>sāgax</i> — <i>sāgio</i> ,
<i>āruspe</i> } — <i>āra</i> ,	<i>perfidus</i> }	<i>semisūpītus</i> — <i>sūpītus</i> ,
<i>būbulus</i> — <i>būbus</i> ,	<i>flūgura</i> — <i>flūgo</i> ,	<i>signūm</i> — <i>signum</i> ,
<i>dājēro</i> } — <i>jāro</i> ,	<i>frāgīlis</i> — <i>frāngo</i> ,	<i>sūpor</i> — <i>sūpio</i> ,
<i>pējēro</i> }	<i>lūcerna</i> — <i>lūceo</i> ,	
<i>dītio</i> } — <i>dītis</i> ,	<i>māmilla</i> — <i>māmma</i> ,	<i>stātus</i> } — <i>stātum</i> ,
<i>causidīcus</i> }	<i>mōlestus</i> — <i>mōles</i> ,	<i>stābīlis</i> }
<i>fatidīcus</i> } — <i>dīco</i> ,	<i>nōto</i> — <i>no</i> , <i>nātum</i> ,	<i>stābulum</i> }
<i>maledīcus</i> }	<i>ōdium</i> — <i>ōdi</i> ,	<i>vādum</i> — <i>vādo</i> .

3. Prepositions of one syllable are *long* in composition when they end with a vowel, and *short* when they end with a consonant; as *dēduco*, *āboleo*.

1. But Prepositions, terminating in a vowel, are *short*, when prefixed to words beginning with a vowel; as *dōecolor*: and those which end in a consonant are *long* when placed before another consonant; as *admitto*.

2. *Pro*, in Greek words, is short; as *prōpheta*. In Latin words, it is generally long; as *prōdo*: but sometimes short; as *prōcella*, *prōfugio*. *Se* and *di* (for *dīs*) are long in compound words, except in *dīrimo* and *dīsertus*. *Re*, in compound words, is generally short; as *rēmīto*, except in the Impersonal Verb *rēfert*, and in several compound words in which the following consonant is supposed to have been formerly doubled; as in *rēlligio*, *rēlliquia*. *I* and *o*, at the end of the first component part of a word, are generally short; as *omnipotēns*, *hōdīe*. *O* is short in *omīto*, *opīrior*.

QUANTITY OF THE LAST SYLLABLE.

A Vowel at the end of a Word.

1. *A, I, O, U*, final, are long.

Exceptions. *a*. All Cases in *a*, except the Ablative, are short; also *ejă, ită, postă, pută, quid*, put adverbially. Greek Vocatives in *a* from Nominatives in *as*, as *Æneă*, are long; but the Vocative of Nominatives in *tes*, is short; as *Orestă*.

Sometimes the words *contra* and *ultra*, and numerals in *ginta*, have the final vowel short; as *trigintă*: but generally the final vowel is long in these words.

Ex. b. Nisă, quasi, Neuters in *i*, as *gumă*, and Greek Datives and Vocatives in *i* or *si*, are short; as *Daphnidă, Daphni, heroisi*.

Mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi, are common.

Sicuti, necubi, and secubi, are short; *uff* has *i* long, but *uffus* and *uffnam* have *i* short.

Ex. c. Ambă, duă, modă, (and its compounds) *sciă, cită, egă, illică, profectă*, and *cedă*, (tell me) are short. Nominatives in *o*, as *leo*, are common; also *adeă, denuă, ergă*, (used for *igitur*), *idcircă, ideo, porră, postrămă, retră, seră, veră*, and *quando*.

The Gerund in *do* is sometimes, though rarely, found short.

2. *E* final, is short.

Exceptions. The Ablative of the Fifth Declension, and its compounds, as *rē, diē; quarē, pridie*; the Vocative and Ablative of Greek nouns of the First Declension in *e*, as *Anchisē*; plural Greek nouns, as *Tempē*; and the second person singular of the Imperative of the Second Conjugation, as *monē*, are long; but *cavē, valē, vidē*, and *respondē*, are sometimes found short.

Monosyllables are long; as *mē, tē*; except the enclitics *quē, nē, vē*, and *ptē, cē, tē*, joined to words; as *suaptē, hujuscē, tuiē*. Adverbs derived from Adjectives of three terminations are long; as *doctē*, except *benē, malē, infernē*, and *supernē*, which are short. *Ferē, fermē*, and *ohē*, are long.

3. *Y*, which occurs only in Greek words, is short.

A Consonant at the end of a Word.

4. Monosyllabic nouns ending with a consonant are long; as *nīl, sāl, sōl, fār, fur, jūs, vēr*; but *cōr, fēl, mēl, vīr, ōs, (ossis), vās, (vadis)*, are short.

a. Monosyllables ending in a consonant, and not being nouns, are short; as *ūt, ān, īn, ād, quīd, īs, quīs*; but *ēn, nōn, quān, sīn, cūr, and pār*, with its compounds, are long.

5. In words of more than one syllable, *B, D, L, N, R, T*, final, are short.

It must be remembered that in these cases the next word must begin with a vowel.

a. But nouns in *ēr*, making *ēris* in the Genitive, as *cratēr, cratēris*; also *aēr, æthēr*, and Hebrew words, as *Daniël*, are long. Also Greek nouns in *ān, ēn, īn*, increasing long in the Genitive, as *Titān, hymēn, delphīn*, are long. The Verb *it*, in the Perfect, (by syncope for *ivit* or *iit*), is long.

M, at the end of a word, is cut off before a vowel: the earlier writers often preserved it, and made the syllable short. It is still short in compound words, as *circūmagō*.

6. *C* final, is long.

a. But *nēc* and *donēc* are short; the Pronoun *hic, hoc*, in the Nominative and Accusative, is common, but generally short; *hic* (here) is long, *fac* is generally short.

7. *AS, ES, OS*, final, are long.

Exceptions. a. But *Anās, anātis*, and *vās, vādīs*; the Greek Nominatives which make *ādīs* or *ādos* in the Genitive, as *Iliās, Pallās*; and Greek Accusatives Plural of the Third Declension in *as*, as *herōds*, are short.

b. Nouns in *es*, of the Third Declension, increasing short, as *milēs, militis*, (except *cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs*, and *pēs*, with its compounds, which follow the general rule) are short; also *es* from *sum*, with its compounds, the Preposition *penēs*, and the Nominatives Plural of Greek words which increase in the Genitive have *ēs* short; as *Arcadēs*.

Es from *edo* is long.

c. *Os* is short in *compōs, impōs, ōs* (ossis) *exōs*, and in Greek words and cases in *ōs*; as *Delōs, Tethyōs*.

8. *IS, US*, final, are short.

Exceptions. a. Plural cases in *īs*, as *musīs*, are long; also Nouns in *is* increasing long, as *glīs, Salamīs, Simoīs*; *is*, is long in the Second Person Singular of Verbs, when the Second Person Plural is *itis*; as *audīs*, with *foris, gratis, vis*. *Ris*, in the Future Perfect, is common.

b. *Us* is long in the Genitive Singular, and the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural of the Fourth Declension, as

gradūs; and in Nouns of the Third Declension which have *u* in declining; as *virtūs*, *virtūtis*. *Us* for *ou*, in Greek words, is long; as *Panthūs*.

9. *Ys*, at the end of a word, is short, as *Capys*, except in words which have *yn* in the Accusative Singular, as *Trachys*.

10. Greek words used in Latin follow their original quantity; thus, All syllables which have in Greek an *ε* (epsilon) or an *ο* (omicron), are short; while those which have an *η* (ēta), an *ω* (ōmega), or a diphthong, are long.

11. The last syllable of every line is common.

SCANNING.

Scanning is the division of a verse into its several feet, in order to ascertain whether their quantity and place are agreeable to the rules of metre.

A Verse is a certain number of syllables so disposed as to form one line of poetry.

A Verse, when it contains the exact number of syllables, is called *Acatalectic*; when it wants one syllable at the end to complete the measure, it is called *Catalectic*; when it wants two syllables, it is called *Brachycatalectic*; when it has a redundant syllable or foot, it is called *Hypercatalectic*, or *Hypermeter*; when it wants one syllable at the beginning, it is called *Acephalus*.

A foot is a portion of a verse consisting of two or more syllables.

The principal feet are the following:—

1. A *Spondee*, consisting of two long syllables; as *ōmnēs*.
2. An *Iambus*, a short and a long syllable; as *āmāns*.
3. A *Trochee*, a long and a short syllable; as *sērvūs*.
4. A *Pyrrhic*, two short syllables; as *dēūs*.
5. A *Dactyl*, one long and two short syllables; as *frigīdā*.
6. An *Anapæst*, two short and one long syllable; as *pīētās*.
7. A *Tribrach*, three short syllables; as *dōminūs*.
8. A *Choriambus*, a long, two short, and a }
long syllable; } as *pōntificēs*.

Cæsūra is the division of a foot between different words, so that the last syllable of a word becomes the first syllable of a foot; as the syllable *tæ* in the following line:—

Pinguis et ingra|tū prēmē|retur caseus urbi.

1. The *Cæsura* is generally a long syllable; but, when it falls on a syllable naturally short, it sometimes renders it long; as *or*, in

Omnia | vincit am|or, et | nos ce|damus a|mori.

2. If there is only one *cæsura*, it is commonly in the third foot; as

Magnus ab | inte|gro sæ|clorum | nascitur | ordo.

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

Figures in Scanning are the various changes made on words to adapt them to the verse. They are *Elision*,* *Synæresis*, *Dieresis*, *Systöle*, and *Diastöle*.

By *Elision*, a vowel or diphthong, or an *m* with a vowel before it, is cut off at the end of a word, if the following word begins with a vowel or an *h*; as

Cōtīcū|ērē ōm|nēs In|tēntī|que ōrā tē|nēbānt.

Monstrum hōr|rendum In|fōrme In|gēns cui|lūmēn ād|ēptūm.

Scanned as if written *monstr' hor'rend' in'form' in'gens cui, | &c.*

1. Sometimes the *Elision* takes place at the end of a verse, when the next word begins with a vowel; as

Sternitur | infelix ali|eno | vulnere, | cœlum|que
Adspicit —.

2. A verse is rendered inharmonious when there are several *Elisions*; as
Primum nam inquiram, quid sit furor hoc; si erit in te.

3. *Ah*, *O*, *hei*, *heu*, *pro*, *si*, *væ*, *vah*, and also most other Monosyllables, are seldom elided; as

O et | de Latī|ā, O | et de | gente Sa|binā.|

Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes remain unelided; and are then generally made short; as

Victor ap|ud rapī|dum Simō|ēnta sub | Illū | alto.

Sometimes also the *m* is not elided; as

Et tan|tum vene|rata vi|rēm, hūnc | sedula | curet.

Synæresis or *Crasis* is the contraction of two vowels into one; as *Dī* for *Dii*; *alveo*, *deinde*, pronounced as if written *alvo*, *dinde*. So also in

Nec tantum Rhodope miratur et Ismarus Orphea.

1. *Synæresis* is frequently employed in the following words: *antehac*, *anteit*, *alveo*, *eodem*, *cui*, *huic*, *deest*, *deerat*, *deerit*, *dehinc*, *dein*, *deinceps*, *deinde*, *dii*, *diis*, *ti*, &c.

2. *I* and *u* are sometimes changed into *j* and *v*, and joined in pronunciation with the following vowel; as *abiete* for *abiete*, *tenuis* for *tenuis*.

Dieresis is the division of one syllable into two, either by resolving a diphthong into its component parts, or changing *v* into *u*; as *aulāi* for *aulæ*, *solūit* for *solvit*.

Systöle shortens a long syllable to suit the exigency of the verse; as

Obstupu|ī stē|ē|runtque comæ; et vox faucibus hæsit.

Diastöle lengthens a short syllable; as

Atque hic | Priāmī|des: Nihil O tibi amice relictum.

* *Elision* is frequently divided into *Synæresis* and *Ecclipsis*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

1. An *Hexameter* or *Heroic* verse consists of six feet, of which the four first may be either Dactyls or Spondees, but the fifth *must* be a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee; as

Titýřě | tū pătŭ|laě řěčŭ|bāns sŭb | tĕgmĭně | fagĭ.

Infān|dŭm ře|gină jŭ|bĕs řĕnĭ|vărĕ dŏ|lŏrĕm.

a. A Spondee sometimes, but rarely, occurs in the fifth place, and then a Dactyl is generally found in the fourth; as

Cără dĕ|ŭm sŏbŏ|lĕs mág|nŭm Jŏvĭs | încrĕ|mĕntŭm.

Verses thus constructed are called *Spondaic*.

1. An Hexameter should not end in a word of more than three syllables; the following line is therefore faulty:

Angescunt aliæ gentes, aliæ minuantur.

Nor should it end in two disyllables; as

Semper ut inducar, blandos offers mihi vultus,

except a monosyllable precedes them; as

Parcite, oves, nimium procedere; non bene ripæ.

Nor in a monosyllable; as *prælia rubricâ picta aut carbone, velut si*; except another monosyllable precedes; as *Principibus placuisse viris, non ultima laus est*.

2. In every verse there must be a cæsura, the following is therefore deficient in this respect:

Romæ | mænia | terruit | impiger | Hannibal | armis.

3. A verse in which Dactyls greatly predominate, suggest the idea of rapid motion: while those chiefly composed of Spondees give the idea of slowness and labour.

2. A *Pentameter* consists of five feet, and is divided into two parts; the former consisting of two feet, either Dactyls or Spondees, and a long syllable; the latter always containing two Dactyls and a long syllable; as

Intĕr|dŭm lâcrŭ|mă || pŏndĕră | vŏcĭs hăb|ĕnt.

a. Each part is called a *penthemimer*, as it contains at least five syllables. The long syllable of the first penthemimer should always end a word, and should not be cut off by elision.

1. A *Pentameter* subjoined to an Hexameter forms what is termed the *Elegiac* verse; as

Hic locus exiguus, qui sustinet atria Vestæ,

Tunc erat intonsi regia magna Numæ.

2. A *Pentameter* should not end with a word of three syllables; the following is therefore incorrect:

Quolibet ut saltem rure frui liceat.

It should not end in a monosyllable; as

Aut facere, hæc a te dictaque factaque sunt,

unless a monosyllable goes before.

The two last words should not end in a short *a*; as

Sis felix, et sint candida fata tua.

Also the Pronoun *is*, Adjectives, Participles, Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Prepositions are excluded from the end of a Pentameter. Nouns and Verbs generally form the proper ending of a Pentameter.

3. In both Hexameters and Pentameters, Rhyming must be avoided; as
Quærebant favos per nemus omne favos.

3. *Asclepiadæan* verse consists of a Spondee, a Dactyl, a Cæsura, and two Dactyls; as

Mæcē|nās ātā|vīs | ēdītē | rēgībūs.|

4. *Glyconian* verse consists of three feet, a Spondee, and two Dactyls; as

Rēddās | incōlū|mēm prēcōr.

5. *Sapphic* and *Adonian*. *Sapphic* verse consists of five feet, a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and two Trochees; as

Intē|gēr vī|tā scēlē|risqūe | pūrūs.

Adonian verse consists of a Dactyl and a Spondee; as

Tērrūt | urbēm.

The Sapphic and Adonian are always connected in stanzas, consisting of three lines of the former and one of the latter.

6. *Pherecratian* verse consists of three feet, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and a Spondee; as

Nīgrīs | æquōrā | vēntīs.

7. *Phaleucian* verse consists of five feet, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and three Trochees; as

Sūmmūm | nēc mētū|ās dī|ēm nēc|optēs.

8. The *Alcaic* stanza consists of four lines, of which the two first are *Major Dactylic Alcaic*; the third, *Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter*; and the fourth, *Minor Dactylic Alcaic*.

The *Major Dactylic Alcaic* consists of a Spondee, (or an Iambus), an Iambus, a Cæsura, and two Dactyls; as

Vīdēs, | ūt āl|tā || stāt nīvē | cāndīdūm.

Sōrāc|tē, nēc | jān || sūstīnē|ant ōnūs.

The *Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter* has a Spondee in the first and third places, an Iambus in the second and fourth, and a Cæsura at the end of the line; as

Sīlvā | lībō|rāntēs, | gēlū|quē.

The *Minor Dactylic Alcaic* consists of two Dactyls followed by two Trochees; as

Flūmīnā | cōnstītē|rīnt ā|cūto.

9. *Iambic* verse is of two kinds, one containing *four* feet and the other *six*. *Iambics* of four feet are called *Iambic*

Dimēter; of six, *Iambic Trimēter*, and were so called because among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in Iambic verse. At first this kind of verse admitted Iambics only; thus

Dimeter—*Inār|sīt as|tūō|sūs.*

Trimeter—*Sūs | ēt īp|sā Rō|mā vī|rībūs | rūit.*

Afterwards, in the first, third, and fifth places, besides an Iambus, they admitted a Spondee, an Anapæst, and a Tribrach. A Tribrach is also found in the second and fourth places. The last is always an Iambus.

Comic writers often use a verse of eight feet, called *Tetrameter* or *Octōnārius*. They admit different feet indiscriminately in every place, except the last. Such also are the metres of Phædrus.

10. *Scæzontics* are the same as Iambics, except that they have a Spondee in the last, and an Iambus in the fifth place.

11. *Trochaics* are generally *Catalectic Tetrameters*, that is, eight feet wanting a syllable. They regularly admit only a Trochee and a Tribrach in the first, third, fifth, and seventh places. In the even places they receive also a Spondee, a Dactyl, and an Anapæst.

The comic writers use the same mixture in Trochaics as in Iambics; but they never admit an Iambus in the former, or a Trochee in the latter.

12. The *Anacreontic* consists of three Iambuses and a long syllable. The first foot may be either a Spondee, an Anapæst, or a Tribrach; as

Pällor | rūgāt | rūbō|rem.

This metre may be called an *Iambic Dimeter Catalectic*.

13. The *Archilochian Heptameter* consists of seven feet, of which the four first are either Dactyls or Spondees, and the three last Trochees; as

Sōlvītūr | ærīs hī|ōms grā|tā vīcē | vērīs|ēt Fā|vōnī.

14. *Iambic Trimeter Catalectic* consists of five feet and a Cæsura, and admits of the same varieties as Iambic Trimeter, having, however, an Iambus in the fifth place, from the deficiency of a syllable in the sixth; as

Trāhūt|quē sīc|cūs mā|chīnāe | cārī|nas.

15. *Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic* consists of three Trochees, with a Cæsura; as

Nōn ē|būr nē|que aūrē|um.

16. The *Choriambic Dimeter* is sometimes combined with the *Greater Sapphic*. The *Choriambic Dimeter* consists of one Choriambic, an Iambus, and a Cæsura; and the *Greater Sapphic* of a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and a Cæsura, with another Dactyl and two Trochees; as

Lydīā dīc | pēr ōm|nēs.

Tē dē|ūs ō|rō Sībā|rīm | cūr prōpē|rēs ē|māndō.

17. The *Choriambic Pentameter* consists of a Spondee, three Choriambics, and an Iambic; as

Tū nē | quēsīērīs, | scīrē nēfās, | quēm mīhī, quēm | tībī.

18. *Dactylic Tetrameter Acatalectic* consists of the last four feet of an Hexameter; as

Ant Ephē|sūm bīmā|rīsē Cō|rīnthī.

This verse is combined in alternate lines with the Hexameter, in Horace, Book First, Odes 7 and 28.

19. The *Ionic a minore*, employed in Horace, B. 3. Od. 12, contains eight feet, having a Pyrrhic and a Spondee alternately; as

Mīsē|rūm ēst | nēquē ē|mōrt | dārē | lūdūm | nēquē | dūcī.

20. The *Minor Archilochian* contains two Dactyls and a Cæsura; as

Arbōrī|būsquē cō|māe.

A TABLE

Shewing the various forms of Metre combined by Horace in his Lyric compositions, and which have been explained in the preceding pages.

1. Two greater Alcaics combined with one Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter, and one Minor Alcaic in Book I. Odes 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37. B. II. Od. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20. B. III. Od. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29. B. IV. Od. 4, 9, 14, 15.
2. Three Sapphics combined with one Adonic in Bk. I. Od. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38. Bk. II. Od. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16. Bk. III. Od. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27. Bk. IV. Od. 2, 6, 11. Bk. VI. Od. 1.
3. One Glyconic and one Asclepiadic in Bk. I. Od. 3, 13, 19, 36. Bk. III. Od. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28. Bk. IV. Od. 1, 3.
4. One Iambic Trimeter and one Iambic Dimeter in Bk. V. Od. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.
5. Three Asclepiadics and one Glyconic in Bk. I. Od. 6, 15, 24, 33. Bk. II. Od. 12. Bk. III. Od. 10, 16. Bk. IV. Od. 5, 12.
6. Two Asclepiadics, one Pherecratic, and one Glyconic in Bk. I. Od. 5, 14, 21, 23. Bk. III. Od. 7, 13. Bk. IV. Od. 13.
7. The Asclepiadic alone or pure in Bk. I. Od. 1. Bk. III. Od. 30. Bk. IV. Od. 8.
8. One Dactylic Hexameter and one Dactylic Tetrameter posterior in Bk. I. Od. 7, 28. Bk. V. Od. 12.
9. The Choriambic Pentameter alone in Bk. I. Od. 11, 18. Bk. IV. Od. 10.
10. One Dactylic Hexameter and one Iambic Dimeter in Bk. V. Od. 14, 15.
11. The Iambic Trimeter alone in Bk. V. Od. 17, 18.
12. One Choriambic Dimeter and one Choriambic Tetrameter in Bk. I. Od. 8.
13. One Dactylic Hexameter and one Iambic Trimeter in Bk. V. Od. 16.
14. One Dactylic Hexameter and one Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic in Bk. IV. Od. 7.
15. One Dactylic Hexameter, one Iambic Dimeter, and one Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic in Bk. V. Od. 13.
16. One Iambic Trimeter, one Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic, and one Iambic Dimeter in Bk. V. Od. 11.
17. One Archilochian Heptameter and one Iambic Trimeter Catalectic in Bk. I. Od. 4.
18. One Iambic Dimeter Acephalus and one Iambic Trimeter Catalectic in Bk. II. Od. 18.
19. Ionic minor in Bk. III. Od. 12.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

Days.	March, May, July, October.	January, August, December,	April, June, September, November,	February,
1	CALENDÆ	CALENDÆ	CALENDÆ	CALENDÆ
2	6tus nonas	4tus nonas	4tus nonas	4
3	5tus nonas	3tius nonas	3tius nonas	3
4	4tus nonas	pridiē nonas	pridiē nonas	prid. non.
5	3tius nonas	NONÆ	NONÆ	NONÆ
6	pridiē nonas	8vus idus	8vus idus	8
7	NONÆ	7timus idus	7timus idus	7
8	8vus idus	6tus idus	6tus idus	6
9	7timus idus	5tus idus	5tus idus	5
10	6tus idus	4tus idus	4tus idus	4
11	5tus idus	3tius idus	3tius idus	3
12	4tus idus	pridiē idus	pridiē idus	prid. id.
13	3tius idus	IDUS	IDUS	IDUS
14	pridiē idus	19nus calendas	18vus calendas	16
15	IDUS	18vus calendas	17timus calendas	15
16	17timus calendas	17timus calendas	16tus calendas	14
17	16tus calendas	16tus calendas	15tus calendas	13
18	15tus calendas	15tus calendas	14tus calendas	12
19	14tus calendas	14tus calendas	13tius calendas	11
20	13tius calendas	13tius calendas	12mus calendas	10
21	12mus calendas	12mus calendas	11mus calendas	9
22	11mus calendas	11mus calendas	10mus calendas	8
23	10mus calendas	10mus calendas	9nus calendas	7
24	9nus calendas	9nus calendas	8vus calendas	6
25	8vus calendas	8vus calendas	7timus calendas	5
26	7timus calendas	7timus calendas	6tus calendas	4
27	6tus calendas	6tus calendas	5tus calendas	3
28	5tus calendas	5tus calendas	4tus calendas	prid. cal.
29	4tus calendas	4tus calendas	3tius calendas	Martii.
30	3tius calendas	3tius calendas	pridiē calendas	
31	pridiē calendas	pridiē calendas		

The first column of the CALENDAR represents the order of the days according to our mode of computation; and opposite to each day is the date by the Roman reckoning.

1. The Romans, as will be seen from the table, divided their months into three parts, called *Kalends* or *Calends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The *Calends* are the 1st day of every month; the *Nones* the 5th day; and the *Ides*, (being eight days after,) are on the 13th. But in March, May, July, and October, the *Nones* fell on the 7th, and the *Ides* on the 15th.

2. In dating a letter, &c. on the precise day either of the *Calends*, *Ides*, or *Nones*, the Romans said *Calendis Januariis*, or *Januarii*; *Idibus Martiis*, *Nonis Maiis*. The day before was *pridiē Calendas*, *Idus*, *Nonas*, or *Calendarum*; the day but one before, *tertio* (*die ante*) *Calendas* or *Calendarum*, *Nonas* or *Nonarum*, *Idus* or *Iduum*, and so through the rest of the numbers. The Romans, including the day on which they dated, called the second day before the *Calends* *tertio*, and so on.

3. They always counted forwards to the Calends, Nones, or Ides, never backwards from them. After the first day of the month, therefore, they began to reckon so many days before the Nones; after the Nones, so many days before the Ides; after the Ides, so many before the Calends of the next month. The 2nd of January would, therefore, be *quarto Nonas*, the 3rd *tertio*, the 4th *pridie*, the 5th *Nonis*. The 6th would be *octavo Idus*, and so on to the 13th, on which the Ides fell. The 14th would be *undevigesimo Calendas Februarias*, and so on to the end of the month.

4. In giving a date of so many days before the Calends, Nones, or Ides, the Romans not only said *tertio*, *pridie*, *postridie*, *Calendas* or *Calendarum*, but *ante diem tertium Calendas*, *Nonas*, *Idus*, which in Cicero and Livy is by much the more common; usually written a. d. iii. Cal.

1. To turn Roman into English Time, the following Rule will, in the absence of the preceding Table, be useful.—Subtract the Roman numeral from ours, adding 1 in Nones and Ides, and 2 in Calends; and the difference is our date; as 13^o Cal. Feb. is thus known; 13 taken from 31 (the number of days in January,) leaves 18, add 2 = 20, that is, the 20th day of January. Again, 4^o Id. Jan. thus: 4 from 13 (the day on which the Ides of the month fall) leaves 9, add 1 = 10, that is, the 10th of January.

Note, the 2 is added in the account of Calends, because the 1st day of the following month and the current day are included.

2. In the Roman leap-year, (happening every 4th year,) both the 24th and 25th of February were called *sexto Calendas Martiæ* or *Martias*; and hence this year is called *Bis-sextilis*.

PARSING TABLE.

A Substantive.

— is a Substantive. Why? — of the — declension, from Nom. —, gender, Why? — number, Why? — person, Why? — case, Why? Repeat the Rule. (Decline it.)*

An Adjective.

— is an Adjective of — terminations, of the — degree, from —, — gender, — number, — case, to agree with its substantive —. Repeat the Rule. (Mention the degrees of comparison. Decline the Adjective and Noun together.)

A Relative.

— is a Relative Pronoun, from — of — gender, number, and person to agree with its Antecedent —. Repeat the Rule. — in — case, Why? —

A Verb.

— is an Active, Passive, or Neuter Verb — of the — conjugation, from —, the principal parts, —, — mood, Why? — tense — number — person, to agree with its nominative case —. Repeat the Rule. (Conjugate the verb, or mention some of its tenses.)

* The words included in *parentheses* may be omitted as the pupil advances.

WORKS BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

1. A TREATISE ON ENGLISH GRAMMAR, STYLE, and POETRY; to which is added, ADVICE to the STUDENT on the Improvement of the Understanding. *Second Edition*, considerably enlarged and improved, . . . Price 4 0

"This appears to be a very clear and well-written work, and evinces considerable knowledge, on the part of the author, of the Philosophy of Grammar and Rhetoric."
Evangelical Magazine.

"We cheerfully acknowledge the great merits of this Grammar, and its superiority to Murray's."
Athenæum.

"This author appears to us a powerful rival of Mr. Lindley Murray."
Gentleman's Magazine.

"Appended to the great mass of common matter, we find many judicious observations that are well deserving the reader's attention; and throughout the whole we perceive much acuteness of investigation, and much maturity of reflection in bringing it into actual service."
Imperial Magazine.

"This is a good English Grammar, concise and yet lucid. The author, with much excellent and additional matter, has followed, in a great measure, the plan of Mr. Murray. The didactic parts of the work contain some cogent remarks, and will be read with profit."
Metropolitan Magazine.

"Upon glancing at the title-page of the present book, we were disposed to look upon it as an impertinent intrusion upon our patience, pestered as we have been from time to time with Grammars of the English language, each vying with the other in amazing inutility, or mischievous incompetency. Upon farther examination, however, we found that Mr. Hiley was qualified for the task he had undertaken. We are particularly pleased with our author's admirable illustration of Rule 12th,—'The Subjunctive Mood,'—which he has handled in a masterly manner."
Monthly Magazine.

"Mr. Hiley's Grammar is a good one, and contains abundant proofs of critical acumen."
The Sun.

"We entirely agree with this author, that 'Mr. Murray's Grammar is in many respects excellent, yet is far from being incapable of improvement, either as it respects the matter or the manner of elucidation.' Acting on this persuasion, Mr. Hiley has produced a Grammar considerably smaller in extent than that of his distinguished predecessor, but containing all that is needful to be known in order to an acquaintance with the English language as to its grammatical structure. A great deal of what is superfluous in Mr. Murray is here left out; some of his mistakes are corrected, his deficiencies supplied, and many of his definitions made more simple and intelligible. We are especially pleased with the chapter on the right use of prepositions."
Wesleyan Methodist Magazine.

"We are glad to see this volume in a second edition; for, even without its new additions and improvements, it is a very efficient and valuable English Grammar; not perplexed by extraneous matters, and, where the higher branches require intelligence for their exposition, showing great judgment."
Literary Gazette.

"It was on no slight grounds that the success of Mr. Hiley as a grammarian was first predicted in this paper. A careful examination of his book satisfied the reviewer that it was not the crude performance of a self-opinionated innovator, but the well-considered work of a gentleman of talents and attainments—of a critic at once tasteful and judicious; and he had sufficient confidence in the discrimination of the public,

NOTICES.

to feel assured that the labours of such a man would not remain unpatronised. The event has verified the prediction. Mr. Hiley's Grammar has already reached a second edition, which, as the title-page truly informs us, is considerably enlarged and improved. The improvement is such, that a higher degree of it, either in other treatises on grammar, or in future editions of the present, can scarcely be expected. We know of no peculiarity in the English language, whether of idiom or construction, which is here unnoticed; of no dubious point which is not made obvious; and of no difficulty which is not cleared up."

Leeds Mercury.

"In a well written preface, Mr. Hiley explains his notions of grammar, and renders justice to Lindley Murray, who has been so much assailed by novices. He, however, is not blind to Murray's real defects; he points them out, and avoids them. 'Induced by these considerations (previously stated,) and by a desire to render the study of grammar much more useful than hitherto,' he observes, 'the author undertook the task of composing the following work. It has been his plan, throughout the whole, to think for himself, and to take for granted the assertion of no grammarian, how great soever his authority may be. No rule has been inserted which was not sanctioned by the most reputable usage; and in points on which preceding grammarians were at variance, he has endeavoured to deduce such conclusions as legitimate reasoning alone appeared to admit.' This is the road to excellence and utility, and Mr. Hiley has certainly travelled it with success. The latter section of the volume is very interesting. Mr. Hiley's opening and concluding addresses to students, contain observations of the highest value. We say, let this work be read by all teachers of youth."

Leeds Intelligencer.

"This is a work of very great value, and adapted for general circulation and utility. Mr. Hiley has presented to the public a Grammar, which we cannot but affirm to occupy a first and foremost station among similar works in the English language. The volume consists of four parts—Grammar, Style, Poetry, and Advice to the Student on the Improvement of the Understanding. Although we have no room for a formal review of this excellent work, we must be permitted earnestly to recommend it to those who have assumed the responsibilities of tuition, and to the private students of the English language. Young men, more particularly, who have enjoyed but limited educational advantages in early youth, and who are desirous of capacitating themselves for respectability and usefulness, by acquiring the art of writing and speaking with accuracy and force, will find this the very best work which they can procure. The parts on Grammar, Style, and Advice to the Student, are excellent, and will amply repay attentive perusal. The last part that we have named is peculiarly instructive, and contains a fund of inestimable moral and literary recommendations."

Leeds Times.

S. D.

2. QUESTIONS and EXERCISES adapted to HILEY'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR: to which is added, A NEW SYSTEM of ENGLISH COMPOSITION. *Second Edition*, considerably improved, Price 2 6

"Great skill and judgment have been displayed in this compilation; the Exercises not only admirably illustrate the several rules, but also convey much valuable information. Mr. Hiley has subjoined a brief system of teaching the Art of Composition, which possesses great merit."

Athenæum.

"These Exercises are on a better principle decidedly than Murray's, and go much farther into the minutiae of our language."

Evangelical Magazine.

"Two or three months ago we inserted a notice of Mr. Hiley's Grammar of the English Language, and we are glad to see that the favourable opinion we expressed of it has been repeated and corroborated by some of the most influential of the London periodicals. Of the present Work we can say with truth, that its arrangement appears to us to be excellent; that it contains a body of information which the student will look for in vain in any other work of its kind; and, to say all in one word, that it is in every respect worthy of the Grammar to which it is adapted."

Leeds Mercury.

NOTICES.

- S. D.
- 3. AN ABRIDGMENT OF HILEY'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR; together with APPROPRIATE EXERCISES, and TWO PREPARATORY COURSES OF COMPOSITION. Second Edition, much enlarged, Price 1 6**

"This Abridgment is rapidly superseding many of the numberless English Grammars, and pretended guides to composition, that have of late years been puffed off by audacious compilers and incompetent teachers. Mr. Hiley's work is really an English Grammar, and though small in size, is so comprehensive, full, and lucid, as to communicate to the student a much more complete knowledge of our language than could be anticipated from its exterior. The present effort is an improvement beyond Murray; nor can there be any question, we apprehend, of its general adoption hereafter in every well-conducted seminary or school-room. We have not had an opportunity of consulting Mr. Hiley's larger work, from which this is abstracted, but if its superiority in value be proportioned to its superiority in bulk, it must be a very complete Grammar indeed; for we have found the Abridgment distinguished, in various parts, by originality, and not a little of the philosophy of Grammar. The two brief preparatory courses of composition which are subjoined, will be found simple and effective means, if judiciously followed out, of teaching the young the whole art of composition, which consists, first in the habit of *thinking* closely and *observing* nicely, and secondly in the habit of clothing these processes with natural and ready expressions."

Monthly Review.

"It would be difficult, we think, to speak of this little work in terms too highly commendatory. In its present enlarged form, so copious in remarks, in notes, and in exercises, it presents less the appearance of an abridgment than of an independent and perfect Grammar of the English language. Indeed, we hesitate not to say, that a person who should be thoroughly acquainted with the work before us, and with no other, would be no mean critic in his mother-tongue. Its having reached a second edition in so short a time, is a proof that public opinion coincides with our own; and we recommend it *now* with increased confidence and additional emphasis."

Leeds Mercury.

"We cannot conceive of any thing more vexatious than to be compelled to peruse those multifarious compositions which issue in droves from the press, which bear the names of Grammars, Exercises, &c. and which in nine cases out of ten display the combined vanity and stupidity of their authors. The Grammar of Mr. Hiley is by no means one of these useless and fatiguing compositions; we were highly gratified with it on its first appearance; we unhesitatingly admitted its great and evident superiority to Murray's long-established school-book; and were fully convinced that at no distant period it would completely supersede the use of that dominant elementary work. With these sentiments relative to the large Grammar, it will be supposed that we were glad to see the Abridgment before us—it is one of the best, if not the very best, compendiums of English grammar which has ever appeared; it is equally adapted to facilitate the labours of the teacher and the acquisitions of the scholar; it deserves the patronage of every instructor who is desirous of smoothing his own task, and subserving the rapid advancement of his scholars; and Mr. Hiley has fully succeeded in rendering his Abridgment lucid in its arrangement, accurate with respect to the knowledge communicated, concise in the exposition of the rules and definitions, and so perspicuous as to be readily apprehended by the most moderate capacities."

Leeds Times.

PREPARING FOR THE PRESS.

1. **PROGRESSIVE LATIN EXERCISES**, adapted to Hiley's Latin Grammar.
2. **SECOND LATIN EXERCISES**, adapted to the same.

~~~~~  
John Heaton, Printer, 7, Briggate, Leeds.





